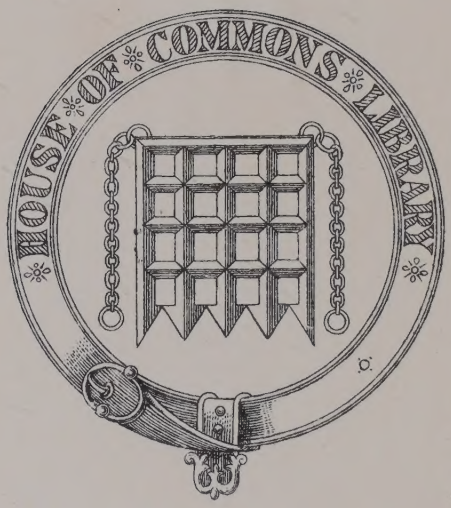

HOUSE OF COMMONS LIBRARY

SOUTH BRIDGE
CATALOGUED
R. Sports, &c.
LONSDALE

TO BE
DISPOSED
BY
AUTHORITY

THE LONSDALE LIBRARY

Editor : THE EARL OF LONSDALE, K.G., G.C.V.O., D.L., & Mr. ERIC PARKER

"The Lonsdale is the greatest library of sport in the world."—*Yorks. Observer.*

NEW VOLUME

FLAT RACING. Editors, THE EARL OF HAREWOOD, K.G. & Lt.-Col. RICKETTS. By Prof. ROBERTSON, A. W. COATEN, LORD HAMILTON OF DALZELL, &c. *Colour Plate and 48 Illus. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Bucker. 21s.*

IN PREPARATION

WILD FOWLING. By Thomas Bland, Robert Blockey, John Inge, Alistair McArthur & D. Service. Many *Illus. Qr. Lthr. 35s. Buckram 15s.*

EARLIER VOLUMES

HORSEMANSHIP. GEOFFREY BROOKE. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 21s.
"Teems with sound & practical advice on every branch of horsemanship."—*Field.*

TROUT FISHING. ERIC TAVERNER. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 21s.
" The best all-round book on brown trout fishing that has appeared."—*Times.*

SHOOTING. ERIC PARKER & OTHERS. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 21s.*
" Within its covers is the wisdom of the shooting world of to-day."—*Shooting Times.*

COARSE FISHING. ERIC PARKER, &c. 148 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckr., 15s.
" The most complete manual ever issued."
—*Doncaster Chronicle.*

LAWN TENNIS. WALLIS MYERS. 65 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" Excellent."—RENE LACOSTE.

CRICKET. D. R. JARDINE, A. P. F. CHAPMAN, P. G. H. FENDER, &c. 55 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" Must remain the standard work on cricket for years to come."—*The Field.*

FOXHUNTING. SIR C. FREDERICK, BT. 67 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 25s.*
" A superb volume: the modern classic on Foxhunting."—*Spectator.*

WINTER SPORTS. LORD KNEBWORTH, &c. 148 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckr., 15s.
" As admirable as it is simple."—*D. Telegraph.*

GOLF. ROGER & JOYCE WETHERED, &c. 100 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" The best volume on Golf."—*The Field.*

SALMON FISHING. ERIC TAVERNER. 307 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 25s.*
" The most thorough & up-to-date book on Salmon Fishing that has appeared this century."
—*Scotsman.*

BOXING. VISCOUNT KNEBWORTH. Qr. Lthr. 31s. Buckram, 15s.
" Should be the Bible of every amateur boxer & professional pugilist."—*The Field.*

ANTHOLOGY. E. PARKER. Qr. Lthr., 30s. Buckr., 10s. 6d. Pocket Edit. 8s. 6d.
" Eric Parker is the ideal editor for this anthology."
—*Sporting & Dramatic.*

HOUNDS & DOGS. A. CROXTON SMITH. 100 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" A most comprehensive & authoritative volume.
—*Horse & Hound.*

BIG GAME—AFRICA. MAJ. H. C. MAYDON, &c. 144 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckr., 25s.
" The best & most comprehensive book on African shooting yet published."—*The Field.*

CRUISING. E. G. MARTIN & JOHN IRVING. 500 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckr., 21s.
" Without question this is the most complete & comprehensive book that has ever been produced on the subject."—*Yachting World.*

RACKETS, SQUASH, TENNIS, FIVES, &c. LORD ABERDARE. Qr. Lthr. 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" The standard authority on the games concerned."
—*Illustrated London News.*

SEA FISHING. A. E. COOPER, &c. 120 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" Certainly the most comprehensive book on the subject ever published."
—*British Sea Anglers' Quarterly.*

MOUNTAINEERING. SYDNEY SPENCER. 132 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckr., 21s.
" By far the most comprehensive book on mountaineering."—*Sunday Times.*

MOTOR CRUISING. K. M. MILLER & J. IRVING. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckr., 21s.
" A veritable Cruiser's Bible."—*B'ham Gaz.*

GAME BIRDS, BEASTS & FISHES. E. PARKER. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckr., 15s.
" Natural history brought to life & made lovely by the author's affection & respect for animals."
—*Glasgow Herald.*

HISTORY OF HUNTING. P. CHALMERS. Illus. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 21s.
" A rich feast of information & entertainment."
—*Sunday Times.*

RIVER MANAGEMENT. H. E. TOWNER COSTON, &c. Illus. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buck., 15s.
" Will be of value to thousands of fishermen throughout the country."—*The Times.*

POLO. EARL OF KIMBERLEY, &c. 110 Ills. Qr. Lthr., 42s. Buckram, 25s.
" The most exhaustive & comprehensive guide to Polo ever published."—*S. Times.*

DEER, HARE & OTTER HUNTING. LORD COVENTRY, &c. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" Will be of the greatest value both for reading & for reference."—*Country Life.*

SPORTING RECORDS, 1937. LORD KIMBERLEY, LORD ABERDARE, &c. Buckram, 15s.
" An entire sportsman's library within one cover."—*Liverpool Daily Post.*

THE KEEPER'S BOOK. By ERIC PARKER, &c. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckram, 15s.
" Here between two covers you may learn the Keeper's art."—*Shooting Times.*

MOTOR RACING. EARL HOWE, &c. Qr. Lthr., 35s. Buckr., 15s.
" A standard work."—*Sports Car.*

**Also a limited edition de luxe, in full leather, price £6 6s.: and the ordinary edition of all the volumes are bound in the same de luxe style, price £3 3s 0d.*

SEELEY, SERVICE & Co., LIMITED, 196, SHAFTESBURY AVENUE, LONDON

THE LONSDALE LIBRARY

of Sports, Games & Pastimes

Editors

The Right Hon. The Earl of Lonsdale, K.G., G.C.V.O., D.L.

&

Mr. Eric Parker

Plate 1

THE RIGHT HON. THE EARL OF LONSDALE ON "MARBLE"

THE PERFECT HEAVY-WEIGHT HUNTER BOTH AS REGARDS PERFORMANCES AND CONFORMATION.

THE LONSDALE LIBRARY

VOLUME I

HORSEMANSHIP

THE WAY OF A MAN WITH A HORSE

A Practical Book on Horsemanship by Brigadier GEOFFREY BROOKE, D.S.O., M.C., author of "Horse Sense & Horsemanship of To-day"; Veterinary Notes by Col. TODD, D.S.O., R.A.V.C., & a chapter on Pig-Sticking by Lieut.-Col. ARTHUR BROOKE, D.S.O., M.C.

With over ninety
ILLUSTRATIONS

London
Seeley, Service & Co. Ltd.
196 Shaftesbury Avenue

92

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

THE LONSDALE LIBRARY

EDITORS' INTRODUCTION

BY

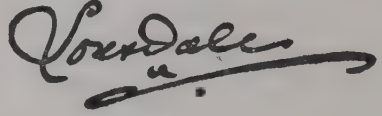
THE RT. HON. THE EARL OF LONSDALE, K.G., G.C.V.O., D.L.

IT is now a long time since a Library of volumes on Sport and Games was first put before the public. During these many years great changes have taken place, in men and in methods; how numerous and how great those changes have been, it needs no more than a glance at the text and illustrations of the older existing volumes to discover. The traditions, the customs, the guiding principles of the great sports and games doubtless remain; but as the years go on new discoveries are made, new developments follow, new methods are found to be successful. In the process of time, these demand notice and explanation.

It would not be difficult to give examples of many such changes. A few may suffice. To take the sport of shooting first, even twenty years ago almost nothing was known of the nature and causes of what was vaguely called "disease" in grouse. The knowledge which research and examination have given us of these to-day has profoundly affected methods of moor management. Again, in regard to fishing, it is only of recent years that we have been able to piece together the life history of the salmon by means of the reading of scales; we have learned much of the powers of vision of fish; and there have been many improvements in the

manufacture of rods and tackle. To come to games. In cricket there have been alterations in the rules, fields are placed differently, modes of batting and of bowling are not what they used to be; in golf, changes in the standards of clubs and of the ball have in turn altered standards of play; and the lawn-tennis of modern Wimbledon is a different game from that of a past generation.

It is believed, therefore, that the Lonsdale Library should fill a gap. Its aim is to help and to instruct. It is intended in the first place for the beginner who wishes to learn all that the written word can teach him of his chosen subject, and to obtain authoritative advice on gear and in practice. But it is also hoped that the more experienced sportsman may find matter of interest in the pages of the Library, either in the bringing together of newly discovered facts or new suggestions for study, or in the comparison of other sportsmen's or players' opinions with his own. No pains have been spared to make the text and the illustrations as full and representative as possible, and if the various volumes succeed in their double appeal to the tyro and to the expert, the Library will have fulfilled the purpose of its Editors, which is, to make it complete.



FOREWORD

WHEN first asked by Sir Theodore Cook to write on Horsemanship for the Lonsdale Library I felt some reluctance in undertaking the work owing to the number of recent publications on the subject. But he stressed the fact that no one volume has dealt fully with the many intricacies that confront a novice. In the following pages I have endeavoured to guide the beginner on such points as stabling, feeding, care of horses and saddlery; how to run his stable, ride and train his horses.

It is hoped that the better-informed may also find some general knowledge in this book.

"Live and learn" is a well-worn proverb. All the years which I have lived have been closely associated with horses, and I hope that my experience may be of use to others following the same road—perhaps jumping the same fences.

My thanks are due to Colonel Todd and Colonel Arthur Brooke for their very valuable contributions on Veterinary Treatment and Pig-sticking respectively. Their chapters deal very efficiently with the two subjects concerned.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

PAGE

THE HORSE 17

CHAPTER II

STABLE KNOWLEDGE & ROUTINE 34

CHAPTER III

RIDING 59

CHAPTER IV

USE OF THE HANDS & LEGS 70

CHAPTER V

JUMPING LESSONS (RIDERS) 80

CHAPTER VI

RIDING TO HOUNDS 88

THE PREVENTION OF DISEASE & THE TREATMENT OF THE MINOR AILMENTS OF HORSES
(pp. 102–161, Chaps. VII–X)

CHAPTER VII

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION & TREATMENT . 102

CHAPTER VIII

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION & TREATMENT (*continued*) 119

CHAPTER IX

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION & TREATMENT (*continued*) 130

CHAPTER X

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION & TREATMENT (*continued*) . . . . . PAGE 142

CHAPTER XI

BUYING A HORSE 162

CHAPTER XII

BITS & SPURS 174

CHAPTER XIII

RIDING-SCHOOL TRAINING 183

CHAPTER XIV

SCHOOLING OVER FENCES 192

CHAPTER XV

DIFFICULT HORSES 205

CHAPTER XVI

RACING OVER FENCES 217

CHAPTER XVII

SHOW JUMPING 235

CHAPTER XVIII

POLO PONIES 245

CHAPTER XIX

PIG-STICKING 266

INDEX 283

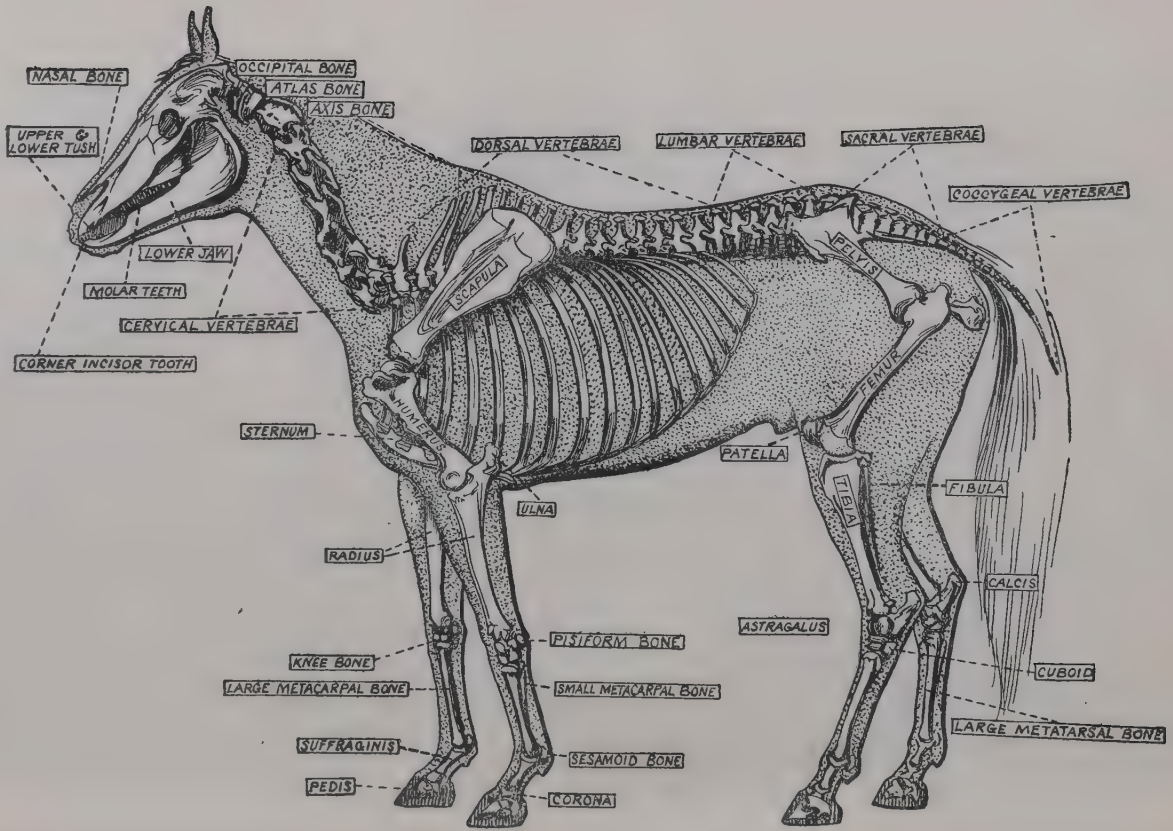
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

PLATE		FACING PAGE
1.	The Right Hon. the Earl of Lonsdale on "Marble"	*Frontispiece*
2.	The Skeleton of the Horse	17
3.	"Skowronek," Arab Stallion	18
4.	"Bend Or," English Thoroughbred and Famous Sire	18
5.	The Old "Haute École" of the Imperial Stables, Vienna	19
6.	16th/5th Lancer Trick Riders	32
7.	The Buckjumper and the Cowboy of the West	33
8.	The External Points of the Horse	37
9.	Hunters at Grass	56
10.	Putting on the Bridle: First Stage	57
11.	Putting on the Bridle: Second Stage	57
12.	Adjusting the Curb Chain	57
13.	Method of Holding the Reins: In Both Hands	76
14.	Method of holding the Reins: In One Hand, and Spare End crossed in the Palm of the Hand	76
15.	Method of holding the Reins: Same as Plate 14 but Spare End laid over First Finger	76
16.	A Method of holding the Reins of Use in making a Young Horse's Mouth	77
17.	When Balance is Sufficient	82
18.	When Grip is Necessary	82
19.	The Rider "Left Behind"	83
20.	The Rider "Going With" his Horse	83
21.	"He's crossed the Ride"	96
22.	The Pytchley Hounds running over Braunston Brook	97
23.	The Application of Dry Heat to a Strangles Abscess	110
24.	Putting on a Bandage: Position of the Loose End on Commencing	111
25.	Putting on a Bandage: The Loose End Turned Down	111
26.	Putting on a Bandage: The Bandage Completed	111
27.	A Shoe for Stumbling	128
28.	A Shoe for Stumbling: After being nailed on	128
29.	Exercising Bandage	129
30.	Method of applying a Dressing to an Over-reach	129

PLATE		FACING PAGE
31.	A Capped Hock	146
32.	A Capped Elbow	146
33.	A Curb	147
34.	A Bone Spavin	147
35.	Front Surface of a Shoe for retaining a Dressing	154
36.	Ground Surface of the Shoe with the Dressing in place	154
37.	A Speedy Cutting Shoe	155
38.	Method of Attaching a Speedy Cutting Shoe	155
39.	Dropped Hip	160
40.	An Intelligent Head and Eye	161
41.	A Well-set-on Head and Neck	166
42.	A Weak Ewe Neck	166
43.	Good Sloping Shoulders	167
44.	Straight Shoulders	167
45.	A Long Back and Bad Shoulders	168
46.	A Good Type of Heavy-Weight Charger	169
47.	"Director," Heavy-Weight Hunter	170
48.	Major V. D. S. Williams' "Wait and See"	171
49.	Bad Fore-Legs	172
50.	Weak Sloping Pasterns	172
51.	Weak Sickle Hocks	172
52.	Good Clean Fore-legs	172
53.	A High-Class Light-Weight Hunter	173
54.	Straight Level Hocks	174
55.	Bits	175
56.	Bits	176
57.	The Grid and a Mouthing Snaffle with Keys	177
58.	The Passage at the Trot: To the Right	184
59.	The Passage at the Trot: To the Left	184
60.	Changing the Leading Leg: The Rider applying his Right Leg	184
61.	Changing the Leading Leg: The Horse changed Behind	184
62.	Changing the Leading Leg: The Cycle of Motion changed	184
63.	"Rufus," an International Polo Pony	185
64.	Jumping Free in the Circular Manège	192
65.	Use of a Guard Rail or Ditch	193
66.	On and Off a Bank: The Effort from the Loins	200
67.	On and Off a Bank: The Strain on the Fore-legs	200
68.	On and Off a Bank: Landing Over the Ditch	200
69.	The Higher Education of a Hunter: Jumping Rails in a Stream	201

PLATE FACING PAGE

70. The Higher Education of a Hunter: Walking up Steps from the River 201
71. Steeplechasing: The Loose Horse 224
72. Steeplechasing: Steadying the Horse for a Jump . 224
73. The "Water" at Liverpool 225
74. The Seat adopted Throughout a Hurdle Race . 225
75. Combined Training 228
76. The Aintree Fences 229
77. A Small Park Course Fence 229
78. Freedom and Activity: Giving the Horse the Rein he requires 240
79. Freedom and Activity: Giving the Horse the Rein he requires 240
80. "Broncho," a Noted and Consistent Jumper . . 241
81. Capt. Dudgeon's "Forty Six" 241
82. Capt. the Hon. C. Greenway's Polo Pony Sire "Malice" 246
83. Polo Pony 247
84. Polo Pony 247
85. Lining Up for the "Throw-in" from the Boards . 264
86. H.R.H. the Prince of Wales taking a Near-side Shot . 265
87. Length on the Ball, Correct Timing, a Follow-through Stroke and a Straight Arm 264–265
88. A Shot at Goal 264–265
89. The Near-side Backhander 264–265
90. The Straightforward Off-side Backhander . 264–265
91. Hitting Across the Front of the Pony: Preparatory to Hitting 264–265
92. Hitting Across the Front of the Pony: Striking the Ball 264–265
93. The Wrong Way 265
94. A Forward Near-side Stroke 266
95. A First-Class Pig-sticker 267



THE SKELETON OF THE HORSE

Plate 2

HORSEMANSHIP

THE WAY OF A MAN WITH A HORSE

CHAPTER I

THE HORSE

THROUGHOUT the past ages to the present day we find the horse's many qualities appreciated and turned to the use of man. His courage and endurance have repeatedly been recognised as dominant factors in war, and his original use for this purpose dates back to prehistoric times. Archæological evidence proves this to have been the case in India, Persia, Assyria and Egypt, where the horse was bred and trained as a means of conveyance. In 2637 B.C. the Chinese are known to have made use of cavalry. Amongst other places in the Bible, we find in the Book of Kings reference is made to Solomon's captains, rulers of his chariots, and his horsemen. The cavalry of Alexander the Great were famous in their day throughout his many campaigns. We know too that the ancient Greeks were highly skilled horsemen, and devoted much of their time to proficiency in equitation. There is both sound advice and practical knowledge to be derived from a study of Xenophon's treatise on horsemanship. It is interesting to note that Herodotus in his book *Thalia* refers to Darius sustaining an accident when hunting on horseback. We know, of course, that the Egyptians, Phœnicians, and

Romans employed horses in chariots in addition to the normal cavalry of those times.

Throughout past centuries to this day the Arabs have been recognised as a nation of horsemen, and it is to these people and their particular breed of horse that we owe the wonderful thoroughbred of modern times.[1]

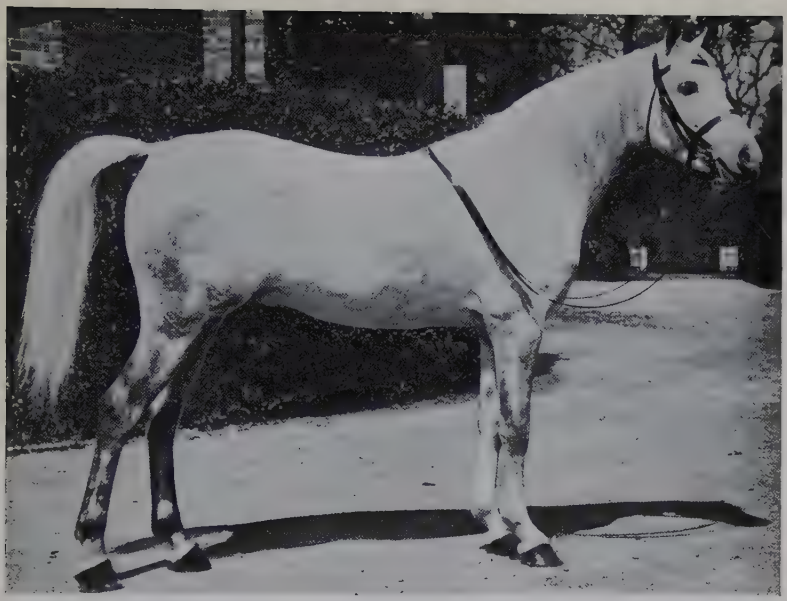
Among the early British at the time of the Roman Conquest the Iceni held a justly high reputation for the excellence of their horses and their horsemanship.

In medieval times good horsemanship was highly esteemed, as witness the English knights who won their spurs by gallantry on the field of battle.

In the sixteenth century horsemanship became a somewhat specialised art, and in Europe the Italian school was the accepted criterion of excellence: hence developed the Continental *haute école*, which later was adopted in England. The Duke of Newcastle (1648) and the Earl of Pembroke (1761) wrote standard works of the day on horsemanship, and in 1771 Richard Berenger, Gentleman of the Horse to George III, produced an excellent work on the subject.

Up to the present day the Imperial Stables at Vienna have produced the most finished products of the *haute école*, and it still exists in somewhat modified form at Saumur in France and other Continental cavalry schools. The extreme *haute école* methods, though at one time adopted, eventually lost favour in England, as the requisite gymnastics and restraint, though producing extreme obedience, fettered the liberty of action and speed so essential to the horse for cross-country riding. The existence of good horses and the amenities for

[1] Strictly speaking, the ancestry of our thoroughbreds is through the Arab, Barb, and Turk strains.



Photos. W. A. Rouch

Plates 3 & 4

TYPES

TOP. "SKOWRONEK," ARAB STALLION.

BOTTOM. "BEND OR," ENGLISH THOROUGHBRED AND FAMOUS SIRE.

Plate 5

THE OLD HAUTE ÉCOLE OF THE IMPERIAL STABLES, VIENNA

THIS SYSTEM PRODUCED PERMANENT LIGHTNESS IN FRONT AND EXTREME OBEDIENCE, BUT FETTERED THE LIBERTY OF ACTION AND SPEED SO ESSENTIAL TO THE HORSE FOR CROSS-COUNTRY RIDING. THIS TRAINING AND BREED OF HORSE IS MAINTAINED TO THIS DAY IN AUSTRIA.

riding over a country throughout the British Isles resulted in a divergence of style from the more stereotyped scientific methods of the Continent. We relinquished the finesse of this latter school, perhaps more than was altogether advisable. In spite of this, whereas the foreign horsemanship was represented by a limited number of specialists in their own school, the great majority of Englishmen, in the last century, who were in a position to keep horses, were capable of negotiating a country at any rate to their own satisfaction, and generally speaking the average standard of horsemanship was high.

Even in this age of mechanisation the greatest enthusiasm still exists for the horse in these Islands, and there is a praiseworthy tendency amongst the present generation to perfect itself in the art of riding.

If we look further afield, we find that varying types and standards of horsemanship exist, chiefly due to national characteristics and conditions in different countries. At home, hunting, polo, and racing almost entirely influence our methods of riding, whereas the Gaucho of South America, the cowboy of the West, and the rancher of our Southern dominions severally require a different style. The seat and saddle of each method are at variance, according to their especial requirements.

Similarly in various countries and even in particular districts, horses are bred to a type to suit existing conditions, each excelling in its own particular characteristics.

Neither the methods of the cowboy, the Arab, nor those of the *haute école* of the Continent are applicable to modern-day horsemanship as required in this country. We make such demands on the performance of our horses that a long and scientific training can alone ensure successful results. We require speed for our race-horses, and this necessitates

extreme impulsion, liberty of action, and at the same time the most careful conditioning.

Again, if we take the case of a polo pony, here also we demand extreme speed together with the utmost handiness, two conflicting desiderata. Whereas for a hunter we require a certain standard of speed and handiness, coupled with remarkable agility and staying powers. Not only must we study the means of attaining the above qualifications in each class, but also the most suitable way of riding for the various purposes described.

There is an old saying that there is nothing new under the sun, which fully applies to horsemanship to-day. For this reason I make no apology for including here extracts from an early translation of Xenophon's *Treatise on Horsemanship*, which although written more than two thousand years ago is largely applicable to present-day training.

The following gives us a very good idea of how they employed their horses for riding across country in the same way that we do to-day.

Xenophon.—"There being frequent occasions to ride a horse up and down steep grounds, and on the sides of them; as also, to leap over ditches, and upon high places, and down from them; it is necessary that all these things should be learnt and practised both by man and horse; who may thus become a mutual preservation, each to the other, and rendered thereby more useful to the public.

The right way then for one to proceed who has a raw horse, and quite ignorant of leaping, is to hold him loosely by the rein, and get over the ditch first himself; and thus by leading the horse, endeavour to make him leap over and follow. If he will not obey, let somebody behind strike him with the whip or switch, whereupon he will leap, and not only the necessary distance, but much further than

was required. For the future, there will be no need to beat him, for, if he does but see a man coming behind him, he will immediately leap. When he has been accustomed to this for a certain time, let him be mounted and tried, at first, at small leaps, and put by degrees to larger ; and just as he is going to rise, let him be pricked with the spurs. This also should be done upon other occasions, when he is required to leap, inasmuch as that the spurs will quicken and animate him to rise and gather up himself closely and compactly, and prevent him from dragging his hinder parts, which would be unsafe and dangerous to the rider.

As hills and inequalities of ground will often occur, the horse should be practised first to go downhill, and should be taught this lesson in soft ground ; when he is used to this, he will go down more readily than upwards. Nor need anyone apprehend that his shoulders will be hurt, when they are informed that the Persians and Odrysians keep their horses as sound and healthy as the Grecians, although it is their custom to ride races downhill.

We will now mention what is to be done upon these occasions by the rider. When the horse raises his fore-part, in order to leap, he should lean forward, by which means the hinder parts will be relieved, and the man feel the shock less forcibly ; and in the moment that the horse is coming to the ground, he should throw his body back, by which means he will, in some degree, elude the violence of the motion, and preserve the justness of his seat.

When the horse leaps over a ditch, or stretches up a rising ground, it is a good practice for the rider to take hold of the mane, that the horse may not have the incumbrance of the bridle to struggle with, as

well as the difficulty of the ground. But when going down a steep or declivity, the man should fling his body back, and support the horse with the bridle, to prevent him from falling headlong down the hill.

It is proper to exercise the horse sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, and more at one time than another ; by this he will not be so apt to conceive a dislike to his task, as he would, if he were always to be worked in the same place, and for the same space of time.

Since it is necessary to be able to ride readily upon all sorts of ground, to have a sure and firm seat, and to be able at the same time to handle one's arms dexterously ; the practice of hunting, where the country will permit it, is very proper and commendable : where there is no opportunity for this, the following expedient may be substituted in its place, and performed by two horsemen. One should act the part of an enemy who flies from his pursuer through all kinds of places, and as he retreats, fling his javelin, and try to annoy him ; the other, having his weapons blunted, whenever he comes within reach, should aim at him, or if he overtakes him, strike him with his spear ; and if they close with each other, let one of them pull his adversary towards himself, and suddenly push him back again, which is the way to dismount him. It will then be the business of him who is pulled and pushed in this manner to spur his horse forward ; by doing which, he will probably unhorse his antagonist, and escape himself.

If two armies being near each other, a real skirmish should ensue, and one party should pursue, while the other retreated, and so perhaps alternately attacking and defending as circumstances require ; upon such occasions, it is requisite

that a horseman should have his horse in such obedience, as to be able to depend upon him in whatever he may require, inasmuch as by his address and docility he will be enabled to annoy his enemy, and provide for his own safety.

In fine, Providence has granted to men the advantage of communicating their thoughts, and instructing one another, by the means of *Speech;* but it is obvious this gift is denied to horses. The best method then of conveying your intentions to them, and, as it were, of declaring your mind, is to reward them when they do as you wish, and to punish them when they are disobedient. This rule is expressed in few words, but is of universal use in horsemanship.

For a horse will certainly be more willing to receive the bridle, and resign himself to his master, if he is recompensed for so doing, and will leap and perform all his exercises with alacrity, if he is taught to expect that his compliance will be rewarded with ease and refreshment.

We will now direct what is best to be done when you undertake one that has too much fire, or one that is cold and sluggish.

Consider then that spirit and ardour are in the temper of a horse, what passion is in the mind of man; and as he who says and does nothing offensive, is least liable to provoke a man subject to anger; so he who avoids fretting and teasing a horse is most likely to make him quiet, and reconcile him to his duty.

When such a horse, therefore, is to be mounted, all possible care should be taken not to alarm or offend him; and after he is mounted, he should be suffered to stand still a longer time than usual, and be directed then to go on by the most gentle signs. Let him begin at a slow rate, and increase his pace

by such small degrees, that he may pass to a quicker motion almost without perceiving it.

Horses which are quick and hot in their temper like men, are disturbed by anything that affects them suddenly, and apt to be surprised by unusual sights and sounds. When you wish, therefore, to slacken the pace of an eager horse, which hurries on too fast ; and to pacify his fury, so as to make him go temperately, or even oblige him to stop, you should not attempt to do it at once, and with violence, but artfully and by degrees, gently pulling him in, then yielding the bridle, and playing with his mouth in such a manner as if you intended rather to win his consent, than force his obedience.

In forming a high-spirited horse, it should be known that, in order to make him gentle and quiet, he should be rode straight forward, and be put to make short turnings as seldom as possible ; he should likewise be kept to a slow and calm pace for a long time together ; by this prudent and mild treatment, his impetuosity will most probably abate, and his temper be softened and rendered more tractable. Such a horse should be worked with a smooth and easy bit, rather than with a rough one. However, if the latter is used, its severity may be mitigated by the gentleness of the hand which holds it, and which may make it as easy as the smooth one.[1]

If anyone, on the contrary, thinks that by riding fast for a great while, and tiring his horse, he shall subdue his spirit ; his opinion is directly opposite to truth. In these cases, the horse always endeavours to get the better by main force, and (like an angry

[1] Note by translator. This observation is most just : it is from the manner of managing them alone that bits are easy or severe to the mouth of the horse ; otherwise, as the Duke of Newcastle says, the bit-makers would be the best horsemen.

man) through the violence of his passion, often brings irreparable mischief upon himself as well as his rider. Horses of this disposition should also be withheld from going at their utmost speed, and upon no account be suffered to run against others ; for the horse that is most eager to contend, is almost always most fiery, and such contention would increase his impatience.

The smooth bit is more convenient to be used to these horses, than such as are harsh and rough ; but if a rough one is used, the hand of the rider should be so light and delicate as to qualify its force.

The rider also should remember to keep a firm seat upon a spirited horse, and to sit evenly and quietly, so as not to discompose the animal by the motion of any part of his body, and to balance himself so truly as not to be obliged to lay hold of anything[1] to preserve his seat.—A horse should likewise be taught to know the different sounds made with the tongue ; inasmuch as they are a kind of aids or directions of the rider, and serve to animate or pacify, according to their different tones. The rider should also remember to persevere in retaining the same sounds ; for were he to change them, and sometimes use one, and sometimes another, arbitrarily, the horse would be confounded, and not understand him, as he can alone be instructed in his meaning by practice and repetition.

If you are to approach a horse who is alarmed at the sound of the trumpet, or any other noise, take care to do it in so calm and cautious a manner that you yourself may not discompose him, and add to his fear, but so as to gain his confidence, and then

[1] It was necessary to keep the most exact equilibrium of the body, and the firmest hold upon the horse, as they had not the advantage of saddles and stirrups.

you will be able to sooth and reconcile him ; and for this purpose, if you have opportunity, you may bribe him, by giving him something to eat.

After all, an impetuous and fiery horse is unfit for the purposes of war, and should, upon account of his temper, be rejected.

As for a sluggish beast, the best manner of treating him will be, in most instances, to observe a method directly contrary to that which is prescribed for the management of one of an opposite character.

If anyone wishes to have a horse possessed of all the qualities requisite for war, and, moreover, stately and beautiful : he must take care not to offend or harass his mouth, by a rash and indiscreet hand ; and, likewise, never to use the whip or spur, but with great moderation and judgment. Ignorant people expect to make the horse appear more brilliant and beautiful by these violences, whereas the contrary effect is sure to happen, for the horse becomes so disordered and irregular by these provocations, that he no longer attends to his manner of going, no longer sees the way before him ; but being interrupted, vexed, and distressed, and falling into confusion, hurries his rider and himself into manifest danger ; and the appearance he will make in this situation, far from being graceful, will be very unbecoming.

But when a horse is taught to go regularly and smoothly, with a rein rather loose and easy, to bear his neck aloft, and to curl it somewhat towards his head, he then does those very things in which he himself delights, and takes the greatest pleasure. A proof of this may be, that when he is at liberty in a pasture, and meets with other horses, and especially mares, he will erect his head and neck, raise his tail towards his back with courage and vigour, trot high and stately, rejoicing in his course, and proud

of himself. If, therefore, the horseman can prevail upon him to appear, when mounted, in the beautiful attitudes he naturally assumes when at liberty, he will make him become fond of being rode; and whenever he appears, he will exhibit a most striking and pleasing figure to the spectators, from his pride, sprightliness, and activity: we will now point out what is to be done, in order to attain these desirable ends.

In the first place, the horseman should be furnished with two bits at least. Of these, let one be smooth and easy, with large knobs or rings; the other should have heavier rings, not standing so high, and armed with sharp points or teeth.[1] When this is put into the horse's mouth, he will be offended, and dislike it, but will hereby be taught the difference between the two, and will be induced to relish the smooth bit with double pleasure; with this latter he should usually be rode, after having had his mouth made and fettled by the rough bit.

If, however, he should pay no regard to this, but be hard upon the hand, there must be an addition of rings, to bring his mouth under strict command.

The rough or sharp bit is made to operate in a greater or less degree, according to the working of the horseman's hand, and as the reins are slackened, or pulled tight. Whatever number of bits are necessary, it is better they should be easy and flexible; for, when a horse has a solid and stiff one in his mouth, the whole of it bears upon his bars, just as one cannot take up any part of a spit, without lifting the whole; whereas the other resembles a chain, the only part of which is firm

[1] This method was certainly drastic, the idea being to mouth the horse with a severe bit with the intention of eventually riding him on a milder one.

and hard, which is pulled and stretched ; the rest is flexible and hangs loose.

The horse feeling this hang in his mouth, endeavours to catch it with his teeth ; and by twisting his tongue and jaws about for that purpose, lets the bit drop lower down than it ought. To remedy this, some rings are fastened in the middle, with which the horse playing with his tongue and teeth, endeavouring to catch them, and the bit remains in its proper place ; and the horse forbears to try to dislodge it. Lest anyone should be ignorant of what we mean by *flexible* and *stiff* bits, we will explain ourselves. A bit is flexible, or easy, which is composed of broad and smooth joints, so that it may easily be bent, and every bit is easier in proportion as its joints are large and pliant. But if the parts of the bit do not move easily, it is ill put together, and becomes sharp and severe. But whatever sort of bridle is used, the horse should be so formed by it, as to perform all that is required of him, or else he will not be such as we have described.

The hand must neither be held so strict as to confine and make the horse uneasy, nor so loosely as not to let him feel it. The moment he obeys and answers it, yield the bridle to him ; this will take off the stress, and relieve his bars, and is in conformity with that maxim, which should never be forgot, which is to caress and reward him for whatever he does well. The moment that the rider perceives that the horse begins to place his head, to go lightly in the hand, and with ease and pleasure to himself ; he should do nothing that is disagreeable. but flatter and coax, suffer him to rest a while, and do all he can to keep him in this happy temper. This will encourage and prepare him for greater undertakings.

There is a plain proof to be given, that a horse

takes pleasure in going fast. When he is at liberty, he seldom chooses to go slow, but naturally delights to run and bound along, if he is not compelled to continue it longer than he likes ; in which case he would grow disgusted, for nothing in excess is pleasing either to horse or man. As soon as he is brought to perform his exercises with truth and grace, after a turn or two, let him be exerted and urged to a swifter pace. When he is sufficiently frank, and prompt to set off at once ; if in that moment when he is going in consequence of the rider's aid, he restrains his ardour, by pulling him in to a certain degree, the horse being on one side urged to go forward, and yet held back at the same time by the hand, his pride and courage will be so roused and animated,[1] that, as it were in a rage, he will advance his chest, shift his legs, and lift them from the ground, but not with all the ease and pliancy that is requisite, and to which he will arrive, when practice has taught him to bend them, with more coolness and regularity.

When he is thus inflamed, and his courage called out, if the hand is yielded to him, mistaking the looseness of the rein for a deliverance from all restraint, he will immediately bound forward, exulting, and conscious of his own qualities, as if he had a pride in displaying his graceful motions and attitude, and imitating the manner and gait which he assumes when he approaches any of his own species. The spectators conceive a thousand good qualities to belong to such a horse, and bestow large praise upon his spirit, resolution, courage, and beauty.

Thus we have finished this part of our subject, having said enough, we hope, for the service of those who delight in this sort of horses. . . ."

[1] This is known as " collecting " a horse.

This treatise is singularly interesting in the light of modern-day horsemanship, and throughout this book will be found close parallels between the methods as presented by Xenophon and those of to-day.

In addition to a knowledge of riding and training, the owner is well advised if he makes himself thoroughly conversant with the character and peculiarities of his horses, and understands the organisation of a well-run stable.

Precaution when Travelling. Let us consider the novice in possession of his first mount ; we will assume that the horse has been selected for him and is at the moment walking into the stable-yard. He naturally feels proud and elated at possessing an animal of his own. The new purchase is led in rugged up, with knee-caps on, to prevent any mishaps on the journey ; his legs are bandaged to keep him warm in the train, and his tail is encased in a tail-pad to prevent it being rubbed in the horse-box. Though he has a head-collar, the groom is leading him in a snaffle-bridle so that he can control him.

Note all these points for your future guidance. Watch the horse walk and see him jog a few steps to ascertain that all is well with him. If the weather is cold he may be given a warm linseed gruel that should have been previously prepared, if mild let him have a drink of water in his box. Have the rugs taken off, look him over, and make friends with him, perhaps give him a piece of carrot and gain his confidence from the start.

The Horse's Mentality. Before you leave, see that he is comfortably bedded down and eating his feed. It is urgent that he should feel happy and contented in his new quarters ; remember that early impressions are lasting with a horse, and whereas

rough handling affects his temper, kindness certainly has the opposite result. The best grooms are patient and quiet, and the same may be said of the best horsemen. One repeatedly hears discussions on the mentality of the horse, and it may be of interest to compare it with that of the dog, though this comparison may be hardly fair when one takes into consideration that the dog has been highly domesticated for many generations, and therefore acquired certain qualities that one could not expect to be developed in a horse.

Notwithstanding this, it is of interest to compare the two. Both have good memories, both understand and respond to their master's voice, both are susceptible to cupboard love.[1] A fresh horse coming out into the open, or a dog taken out for exercise will each manifest its natural exuberance of spirits, but the horse's methods are rather more disconcerting than those of the dog. Both vary in their degree of intelligence and character, but whereas dogs of a similar breed generally have both similar character and characteristics, only the latter applies to the horse.

For instance, although the thoroughbred may have speed and action according to his conformation, and though certain sires and dams stamp their progeny, the breed of thoroughbreds as a whole possess every type of character for good or for evil. The dog, through constant contact with

[1] Mr. Somerville Tattersall tells an interesting story of the famous mare Sceptre. He frequently used to visit her and on one occasion gave her some chocolate. Later when he again paid her a visit, she was at liberty in her paddock, refusing to come near anyone, until she espied him and instantly came scampering up for her chocolate. On every occasion after this, she would always single him out and rub her muzzle against him asking for her special treat. I believe her stock evinced a similar liking for this particular delicacy.

man has developed to a very marked degree an intense affection for his master, whereas, though a horse may be friendly, the most we can expect from him is his confidence. Consequently the horse is slower to learn than the dog.

There is little doubt that if horses could live with us in the same way as our dogs, they would develop the same domestic qualities, and do so to some extent among the Arabs.

Often one has seen horses come to a stable with a wild, excited eye denoting the rough handling that they had been subjected to, and, after a couple of months of quiet treatment, their whole expression and outlook on life has changed.

I have come across Australian ponies running wild in a herd, which, when first caught, showed every possible vice, and after judicious treatment at the hands of man, and once their confidence was gained, within a year, they became the most amenable animals.

So we must accept the limitations of the horse's affection and adaptability. We must further realise that he is a much more highly strung animal than the dog, and he is liable to develop idiosyncrasies peculiar to his breed from overfeeding and lack of exercise. A dog readily knows when he has done wrong and will even come up to his master to be punished and almost promise not to offend again—till the next time. A horse has no such conscience, and the treatment administered to a dog would hardly be justifiable in his case. More often than not a horse does wrong from fear, i.e. lack of confidence, and punishment is obviously not the proper correction. Bad habits must be instantly checked, viciousness and stubbornness, if we are convinced that inexperience, pain or fear is not the cause, must be severely dealt with.

Plate 6

16TH/5TH LANCER TRICK RIDERS

AT ONE TIME HORSES WERE NERVOUS OF MOTORS, NOW A PONY CART MAY CAUSE MORE CONCERN. THE ABOVE SHOWS THAT A HORSE CAN BECOME ACCUSTOMED TO ANYTHING.

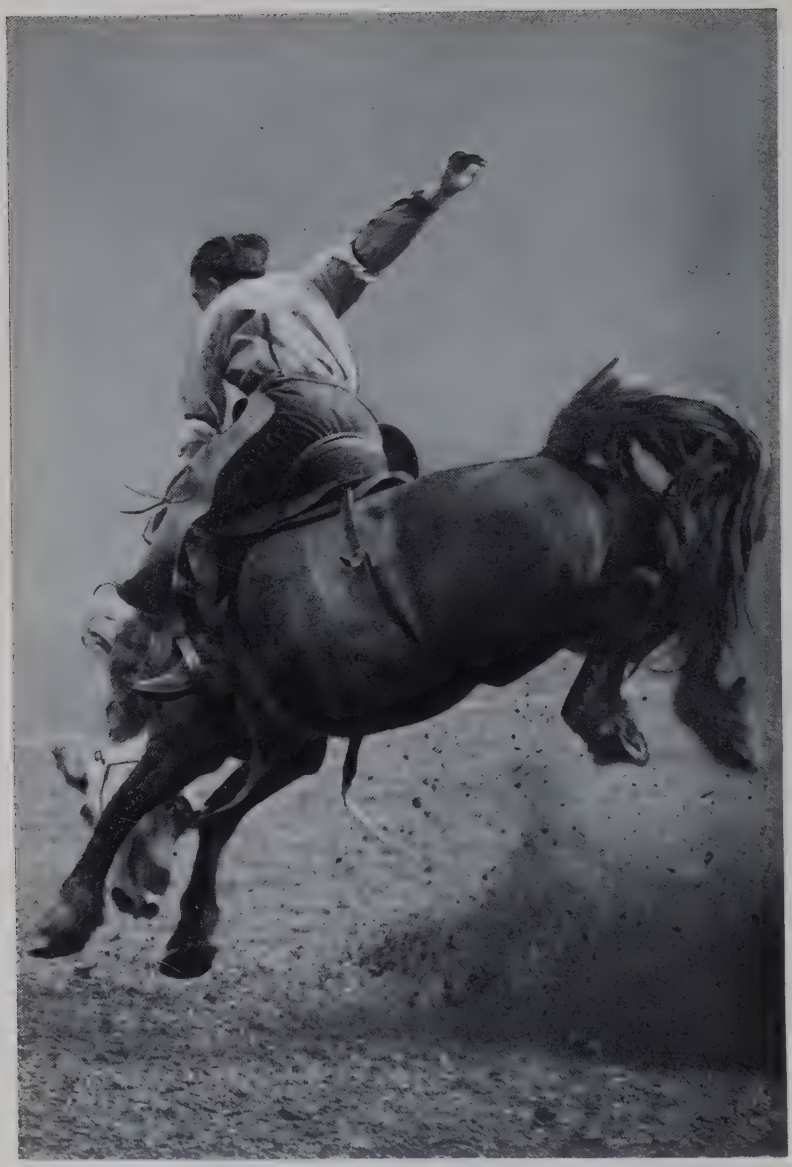


Photo. Sport & General **Plate 7**

THE BUCK-JUMPER AND THE COWBOY OF THE WEST

But how few men consider the cause, and the subsequent chastisement may nullify months of careful training, if not entirely spoil a high-couraged animal. There are two exceptional difficulties that we encounter when dealing with a horse. In the first place we demand certain physical efforts, and it is only by gauging very accurately the amount we are entitled to exact that we can obtain reasonable results. We can only expect him to respond in proportion to his condition, soundness, conformation, standard of training and confidence. This alone is a study in itself.

Secondly, we are faced by a further problem to solve, this being the fact that no two horses have similar characters, and each individually requires some modification of our methods of dealing with it.

Their temperaments vary like human beings; one is slothful, the next is keen, a third is bold, and a fourth is timid, a fifth is honest and reliable, and others again, unfortunately, the extreme reverse.

Certainly there are rogues, and whether it is due to hereditary instinct or intuition, they are exceedingly difficult to reclaim, but the misfortune lies in the fact that man is largely responsible for filling this category, and only patient study and experience will prevent it. So our owner of the new purchase is advised to make a study of the equine psychology from the day that his horse walks into his stables, and should he live to a ripe old age he will wisely admit that there is still more to learn.

CHAPTER II

STABLE KNOWLEDGE AND ROUTINE

THE Disadvantage of Ignorance. In the previous chapter it was urged that the horse owner should have a sound knowledge of stable routine. Many a man through lack of this is never master in his own stable; unable to correct the methods of his groom, he can merely abuse him, threaten him with dismissal, or more probably suffer in silence and ignorance. Luckily there is a very fair supply of good stud-grooms, and so the unenviable position of the ignorant owner does not always occur.

But, rich or poor, there is no man but can benefit by a thorough comprehension of what is right and what is wrong when dealing with horses. It is inconceivable into what strange paths a lack of knowledge may run its riotous course.

The following is merely one example picked out of many :

A farmer in a well-known hunting country had a stack of good hay for sale. A loyal and influential member of the hunt decided to buy some, and being assured by the farmer that it was excellent old meadow hay, he intimated that later he would probably take the remainder. Unfortunately, one of the farm hands included a small portion of moderate hay from the bottom of the stack in one of the trusses.

Shortly afterwards the local corn merchant paid his usual visit to the purchaser's stud-groom to present him with his "perks" on forage bought, and mentioned that it was unfortunate that he had not ordered any hay from his firm. The groom took the hint, carefully selected some of the inferior hay and presented it to his master for inspection, pointing out the bad quality and asserting that it was all the same, while he deplored the fact that his horses could never do on that class of stuff. The ruse was successful, the owner possessing neither the experience nor judgment to contradict his servant and investigate the quality of the bulk of the hay himself. Consequently the contractor slipped in, to the benefit of the groom's pocket and to the loss of the farmer, who was informed that the temainder of his stack would not be required as the first lot was not good enough, and unfit for the stables. Not unjustifiably he was extremely indignant, and, at the best of times a somewhat difficult type, subsequently refused to give any assistance to the hunt or take down his wire the following season.

This unfortunate misunderstanding would never have occurred had the owner been in a position to rely upon his own opinion instead of depending on that of his unscrupulous groom.

Yet one more illustration appears worthy of inclusion here.

It is at times difficult to avoid, but no master should put his servant in the position of receiving a bribe. There is a very great difference between the tip for services rendered, probably entailing extra work, and a bribe that is given to secure a contract or deal. We have considered the case of the corn merchant, and the shoeing-smith is also ready to make it "worth the groom's while," as the saying is. But there is yet another case that not

only affects the master's pocket but the type of horse that finds its way into his stable. Some owners allow their grooms to buy or advise them on the purchase of their horses. Frequently the process is as follows : Jones, the stud-groom, has two horses to look at for his master, one belongs to Mr. A. and is in every way desirable ; but Mr. A., being a man of high principles, has no intention of offering a bribe to Jones. The other horse belongs to B., who is a less scrupulous owner and promises Jones £10 if the horse is bought. His horse is in no way as good an animal as A.'s ; but Jones, on his way home, tries to persuade himself, against his conscience, that there is little difference between them, and that probably B.'s horse will come on a lot ; besides, he gets a tenner for B.'s.

By the time Jones gets back he has persuaded himself to his own satisfaction that there is really nothing between the two horses. By the time he sees his master that tenner in the offing has transformed B.'s animal into infinitely the better horse of the two, and subsequently Mr. A. receives a polite letter from the prospective purchaser saying that he regrets that his horse is not quite what he requires.

Of course, there are many honest grooms, but human nature being what it is, it is extremely foolish to deliberately put temptation in their way.

Stable Hints for Novices. In almost all trades and industries, before holding a position of control, a man must have studied the various stages of production to become thoroughly expert. Naturally this is not possible in the case of the average horse owner, and he must needs depend on the efficiency of his groom. The following hints are for the benefit of the novice, and are given with the intention of enabling him to possess sufficient

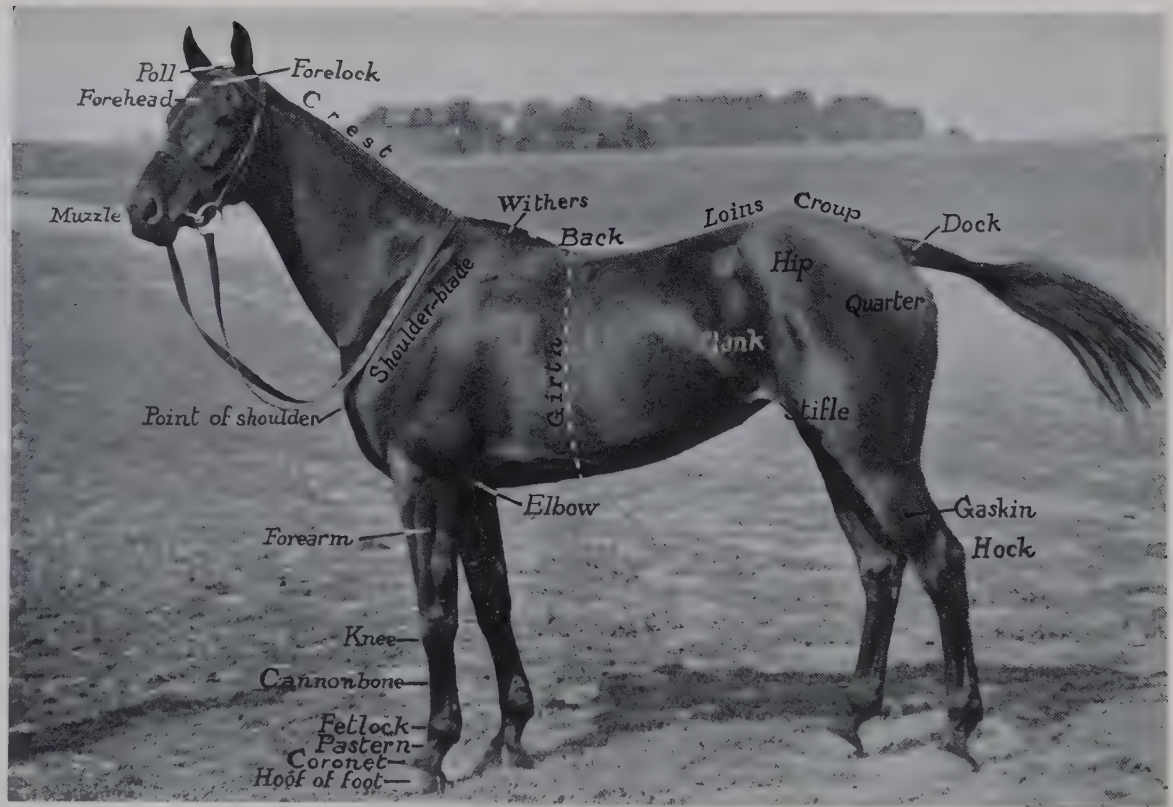


Plate 8

THE EXTERNAL POINTS OF THE HORSE

knowledge of work in the stable to ensure that his horses are being adequately cared for. He will also be in a position to correct faults that are liable to be made by careless stablemen. With this information and some further experience he should be able to look upon himself as master in his own stable.

The photograph on the opposite page gives sufficient detail for the reader to understand the various parts of the horse referred to in this chapter.

When Approaching a Horse in the Stable. First of all, remember that the proper handling of a horse in his stable is most important. Rough usage is liable to make him nervous and possibly vicious. Immediately check any man who is harsh or shouts at his horse, and if he continues this bad habit it is as well to dismiss him, as he is not a desirable person to keep in your stable.

Always speak when going up to a horse in his box ; a kindly tone will put you on good terms with an animal, and he will learn to move over from one side to the other at the verbal command.

A horse should become accustomed to being handled all over. Some resent their head and ears being touched, but with a little patience and quiet stroking they will soon show contentment and appreciate the soothing effect of having their ears gently pulled.

To Detect Lameness. The hand, in addition to the eye, is an essential means of detecting the seat of any lameness, and although we will not, at this stage, discuss unsoundness, it is as well to realise that by running the fingers down a leg one can accustom oneself to the feeling of a healthy limb. By so doing, one can with practice detect any unusual swelling, abnormal bony formation, or heat.

To Lift a Foot. It is equally important to know how to lift up a foot: to pick up the off-fore —stand level with the horse's off-shoulder, facing the rear. Run your right hand down the back of the forearm and grasp the leg just above the knee. Press with the elbow against the upper part of the forearm to make the horse put his weight on the opposite leg, then with the left hand lift up the limb below the knee and catch hold of the foot.

To lift up the near fore, stand on the left side and reverse the above instructions.

Should it be necessary to lift up a foreleg to prevent a horse kicking when his hind legs are being examined or treated, the leg should be held by the hoof and not by the fetlock.

To pick up the near hind foot, stand with your back to his head on the left side, run your left hand down the quarter to just above the point of the hock, then grasp the leg with your other hand above the front of the fetlock, lift the foot from the ground, resting the horse's leg across your left thigh. To retain the leg in this position hold the hock with the left hand and the pastern with the right.

Care in Doorways. Carelessness in leading a horse in and out of a stable door may result in knocking one of the hips. Some animals are very clumsy and only vaguely conscious of the amount of space that their hind-quarters take up. One should always look back to make sure that he comes out straight and not at an angle to the doorway.

Leading a Horse in Hand. When leading a horse in hand either at a walk or trot, the reins should be taken over his head and held in the right hand, the spare end being retained in the left. Both to see a horse's action and to detect lameness it is necessary to run him down at a trot. A

straight level surface about thirty yards long is most suitable ; the man in charge should leave the horse's head free for any requisite play, and should not look back while he is running beside him. Some horses are slovenly trotting away from their stables, but will be found to exert themselves when going towards home.

So much for handling a horse; we can now turn our attention to grooming.

Suitable Utensils. In all stables certain utensils are essential, such as water-buckets, brooms, hay-forks, and each stableman should be in possession of the following :—

1 Body Brush
1 Curry Comb
1 Dandy Brush
1 Water Brush
3 Sponges
1 Hoof Pick
1 Burnisher
1 Leather
3 Rubbers
1 Wisp
1 Basket

The body-brush to clean the horse's coat : the curry-comb to clean the body-brush. The dandy-brush to clean off dry mud or sweat in a long-coated horse. It is in no way to replace the proper use of the body-brush, being much too hard for that purpose. The water-brush for washing the feet. The three sponges for cleaning respectively the horse's dock, his eyes, and nostrils, and saddlery. The hoof-pick for picking out the feet. Rubbers are for drying a thin-coated horse after first using a loose handful of straw, which should always be utilised for drying and cleaning off mud in the

first instance. A rubber is also used for finishing a horse and putting on the final polish.

The wisp is a pad of hay or straw which should be used vigorously in the form of massage ; it should be applied with ample weight on the horse's neck, shoulders, fore-ribs and quarters, but not on the loins. Its proper application stimulates the circulation, has a healthy effect on the skin, and tones up muscles.

Grooming. Most experienced strappers have their own methods of grooming, and provided they are carried out in a methodical and workmanlike manner it is as well not to attempt to change their procedure. But for instruction a definite system is necessary to ensure that no part of the actual grooming is omitted, and that the whole is carried out in proper sequence.

First of all the feet should be picked out ; this should be done at early morning stables as well as when grooming after work or exercise. Special attention must be paid to the cleft and side of the frog and the inside edge of the shoe. The hoof may then be washed, but care should be taken not to wet the heels. During this process any clinches sticking up or loose shoes should be noticed.

Before starting to use any brush on the horse, he must be thoroughly dried. As far as possible they should not be brought in sweating as they are liable to break out again in their stable and may in such cases take many hours to dry. In fine weather it is advisable to walk a sweating horse about for ten minutes to cool him off, without removing the saddle but with the girths loosened. The saddle-mark, loins, belly, and jowl should be dried with fresh handfuls of straw rubbed against the hair. A dry rubber held loosely in the hand should then be applied until the horse is dry all over.

Any mud on the legs or belly should be rubbed off with straw.

Horses that Break Out. Horses that break out in a sweat after being groomed and rugged up are a great source of trouble to an anxious groom, as they are liable to get chills and lose condition. They will require to be dried again in the same manner till there is no sign of sweat on the body. They should be led and not ridden for the last half-mile or more when returning to stables.

In obstinate cases it may be necessary not to allow a full drink till the horse is thoroughly dry, and leave him to stand for half an hour with loose straw on his back and a blanket thrown lightly over the straw.

Chill Air on Wet Heels. In winter a horse is less likely to come in sweating, and special attention must be paid to drying his extremities. On no account should the heels be left wet or the chill air on the unprotected skin will produce cracked heels. It is advisable to put drying bandages on the legs as these will then dry while the rest of the body is being attended to.

Drying and Cleaning. It should be fully realised that the first essential in grooming is to dry the horse. If this is neglected it will most certainly react on the animal's health and condition. Next the eyes, lips, nostrils, and dock should be attended to and clean sponges used for this purpose. Then proceed to clean the horse with the body-brush.

Commencing on the near side just below the ear, work down the neck and forehand over the back, ribs, belly, quarters, and hind leg on that side. In the same way work from the head to the hind leg on the off side.

The head and mane should next be brushed, and finally the tail. To employ the body-brush

efficiently the groom should stand away from his charge and use a straight arm, and although bringing the brush down gently, he should put weight on it as he works " with the grain " through the hair. This will force the bristles well into the coat and bring out the scurf.

Periodically during the grooming, the body-brush will require the scurf to be cleaned out against the curry-comb ; this instrument should never be used on the horse, but carried on the back of the groom's hand so that he can rest his palm on the animal. The dirt should be knocked out in one place on the floor of the box, when it can later be swept up.

The mane should be cleaned by taking a lock at a time and brushing from the roots. To avoid dirtying the parts already cleaned it is advisable to commence from the withers upwards, while keeping the horse's head low. The mane may be finally smoothed down with a damp brush.

The tail should be treated in the same way as the mane.

The horse should then be wisped vigorously as already explained, and lastly smoothed over with a rubber.

Feeding. Feeding horses is the most important detail of horsemastership. The harm that may arise from incorrect feeding is almost incalculable, and although one must depend upon a groom for actually giving the feeds, by knowing how a horse should be fed and insisting on your instructions being carried out, you can ensure against unlimited misfortune.

Correct feeding is largely a question of experience. By that is meant that no two horses require exactly the same ration. Gross feeders are comparatively easy to deal with ; the danger lies in overfeeding

them, and this can easily be prevented by carefully measuring or weighing each feed. Highly strung, delicate feeders are a much more difficult problem, and these require careful study to induce them to eat their proper ration of food.

When I was young and in charge of a troop of cavalry horses, I was under the impression that some horses were naturally thin. My troop sergeant used to remark philosophically "that horse always has been thin, sir, ever since we had him, nothing will ever make him fat." With years of experience I have learnt the fallacy of this.

Naturally, if all horses were treated the same, and if each was not individually studied, there would be a certain proportion that would thrive, often at the expense of the others. If a horse is thin, one must analyse the reason and attempt to deal with it. In the Army there is a limited scale of forage per horse. For the work demanded of the troop horse it is really the minimum ration, based on 8lbs. of straw, 10 lbs. of oats, and 10 lbs. of hay. To obtain extras such as linseed, bran, and green food, an equivalent in value must be deducted from the basic ration. This would dumbfound the average stud-groom, who is not limited in this way.

Thus, the squadron leader or battery commander in the Army has to organise a very careful system of economical feeding. To add to his difficulties, his horses have to carry 16 stone on a long day; stables in barracks are usually exposed and draughty, and possibly the water is exceptionally hard. His system must therefore be established on the principle of borrowing from Peter to pay Paul. The Peters in this case are the good-constituted, short-coupled, gross feeders—the best type of troop horse. The Pauls are the long-backed, shallow type, and the excitable, highly strung, delicate

feeders. However, it would be out of place here to discuss the difficult problems that befront the squadron leader, who is often sorely tried by having to feed on poor-class forage, that an ingenious contractor has managed to pass successfully through the weekly Garrison Forage Board.

In the first place it must be realised that a horse has a comparatively small stomach.

Hence : (A) Small but frequent feeds must be the rule, i.e. a feed of hard corn should not be more than $3\frac{1}{2}$ lbs., and the horse should be fed four or five times a day.

(B) Feed at regular intervals, and the horse's internal organisms will function more readily and efficaciously.

(C) Water before, not immediately after, feeding, or when possible have water always at hand, and the horse will drink to his own satisfaction and comfort.

(D) Green forage or hay given directly after hard corn will militate against the proper digestion of the latter.

(E) Many horses are bad feeders by day, but will eat up at night, and their feeds should be arranged accordingly.

(F) Have a regular method of measuring feeds. (An ordinary quartern corn measure contains $2\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. of oats.)

(G) Most horses feed better when they are shut up and left quietly alone. On the other hand, some do better if they can see the horse in the box next to them.

(H) A horse that passes his oats whole is not masticating his food as he should, and consequently it is not being properly digested. His teeth may require attention, his oats should be crushed, and chaff mixed with them.

(I) **Effects of Overfeeding.** Overfeeding or a disproportionate amount of heating food—beans, peas, oats, and barley—will possibly result in any of the following :—

(*a*) humour,
(*b*) filled legs,
(*c*) indigestion,
(*d*) grease,
(*e*) cracked heels,
(*f*) fever in the feet,
(*g*) excitability.

Consequently the less work a horse is getting the smaller proportion of this concentrated food should be given. We are now up against the problem of a thin horse that needs building up. If he is worked too hard he will not put on weight, and if his exercise is limited we must cut down the above-mentioned type of heating food. Therefore :

(J) This class of horse, which requires bulk feeding, must be given a much-increased ration of good hay, up to 16 lbs.

Horses whose coats are hard indicate the fact that they may be suffering from worms or injudicious feeding. A veterinary opinion and treatment will be required in the former case ; in the latter

(K) **Bran and Linseed Mash.** A more laxative type of diet is required, and this is generally preferable to physic. The horse should daily be given a bran and linseed mash made as follows : on 1 lb. of linseed pour three pints of boiling water, which will instantly crack the linseed ; add 2 lbs. of bran and 1 oz. of salt ; allow this to simmer for three hours. This should be well stirred, then covered over with clean sacking and allowed to stand for twenty minutes. The thicker the mash

the more appetising for the horse. Again : 2 lbs. of boiled barley, which should be allowed to simmer for four hours, with 1 lb. of boiled linseed, plus 1 oz. of salt, may be given in the place of 3 lbs. of hard oats. When obtainable, green forage, lucern, carrots, swedes, will further loosen a horse's skin that is tight and dry and have a mild laxative effect.

Good bran is almost unobtainable in many parts of the country, and poor bran has small feeding properties. For this reason a bran and linseed mash should normally be given, except twenty-four hours before and after physic, when a bran mash alone is preferable.

Bran Mash. To make a bran mash : scald a bucket, empty out the water, put in 3 lbs. of bran and 1 oz. of salt, add 2½ pints of boiling water, stir well, and leave to stand for twenty minutes.

The above are a few general principles regarding feeding, and now we might consider the various items in a horse's dietary.

Watering. *Water* should always be in the horse's box or stall, and the bucket cleansed daily. The more a horse drinks the better, and provided that it is always obtainable there is no likelihood of his taking too much at the wrong time. Soft water is preferable to hard, and if used, a good effect will be noticeable in the coat. A horse must never be stinted in his drink, and if he empties a bucket it should be instantly refilled. The mere fact of keeping water in the stable tends to take off the chill in cold weather. There is a risk and frequent tendency of stablemen not giving their charges enough to drink, and lack of good fresh water will certainly react on a horse's condition. Many horses enjoy drinking leisurely, like old gentlemen sipping their port wine. The horse, like the man,

resents being hurried or being deprived of his full measure by an impatient servant.

Oats. *Oats* are the staple food in the stable and are a good muscle-producing diet. They should be clean, big, and hard. The best way to learn to judge oats is to examine selected samples and make your comparisons with them; they should appear full in the husk, be free from dust or mustiness, rattle when dropped from the hand on to a table, and not look dull. The best oats will run from 45 lbs. to 50 lbs. to the bushel. Feed on old oats which have been thrashed the year before. The better-quality oats are home-grown, and if one possesses the facilities for storing it, it pays to buy in the spring, by which means you are sure of getting last year's crop. Your storehouse must be dry and well ventilated, and the grain thoroughly turned over every month.

Generally, it is better to feed on crushed oats, which are more easily digested, but this is not essential in the case of a horse that thoroughly masticates and digests his corn.

Hay. Hay is the bulk food that is easily digested and has flesh-producing qualities. Before a horse can be got into hard condition he must be well covered and gradually hardened by steady exercise. Horses hunting can have up to 10 lbs. of hay and, during the building-up period, from 14 to 16 lbs. daily. Hay should be a year old, smell sweet but not mowburnt, and be free from dust and mildew. Well-saved rye grass and clover is sound feeding. Sanfoin is excellent but more expensive. Coarse hay grown on marshy land is bad. It requires an expert hand to judge of meadow hay; for in addition to the way it has been saved he must also consider the percentage of good grasses it contains. A crop that is cut too late loses much of its value, as

the seeds fall out. Chopped hay or chaff should always be given with oats as this prevents horses from bolting their corn and thus not digesting it properly.

Straw. Wheat straw makes the best bedding and it should be clean and unbroken. 70 lbs. per week should suffice for each box. Horses are liable to eat oat straw bedding, whereas barley straw irritates the skin.

Bran. Good flaky bran from an old-fashioned mill is difficult to obtain. The common type has its feeding properties largely eliminated by the modern process of milling. It can be given wet as a laxative, dry bran having the opposite effect—see page 46 for bran mash. Stale bran should be washed out of a manger with salt and water.

Linseed. Linseed is both appetising and nourishing; it also keeps the skin in good condition and adds a bloom to the coat (see page 45 for bran and linseed mash). It can be given with boiled feeds. Linseed tea or oatmeal gruel should be given to hunters when they come in from hunting. The former is made by boiling 1 lb. of linseed in 2 gallons of water until the linseed is quite soft.

Oatmeal Gruel. Put 1 lb. of meal to 1 gallon of water, boil and stir and allow to simmer until it is quite thick.

Beans and Peas. These are excellent for feeding and muscle-producing, but both are heating, especially the former. They are best given crushed and boiled. Not more than 1 lb. of beans or 2 lbs. of peas per day should be given; but horses turned out in the winter may be given up to 8 lbs. crushed. Crushed maize may be given in the same proportion.

Salt. All horses should have rock salt in their mangers, and 1 oz. in their boiled feeds or mashes.

Salt promotes the digestion and aids in building up tissue.

Green Food. Green food is an excellent cooling diet, but if given in abundance when cut wet, especially immediately on top of a feed of hard corn, there is a risk of colic. When green food is unobtainable carrots and swedes are equally good.

Perhaps the simplest way of arriving at some sound system of feeding is to lay down a dietary for a healthy horse or hunter in hard, regular work. This can be modified as required for young horses that need building up and that do not require the same amount of corn (leaving out for the moment the difficult problem of delicate feeders).

Daily Routine and Feeding. 6.30 a.m. Get down to stables and clean out the bedding. Water, pick out feet, sponge nostrils, and dock as previously explained. Remove night clothing, groom the horse over with body-brush and clean the head-collar : put on day clothing.

7.15 a.m. Feed—2 *lbs. crushed oats* with chaff.

8 a.m. Saddle-up for exercise. Thoroughly air stable and sweep out the floor. Air night rugs. Hay-up with 2 *lbs. of hay* for horses coming in, when they should be thoroughly groomed and bedding put down.

Midday. Water and feed—3 *lbs. of corn* mixed with chaff, bran, and gratings of carrots.

3.30 p.m. A corn feed ; or the following may be substituted : 1 lb. of boiled peas, ½ lb. of boiled linseed, 2 lbs. of boiled barley, ½ lb. of steamed bran, 1 lb. of steamed oats. This must be prepared in the morning and left covered over until required at 3.30 p.m.

5 p.m. Evening stables. 3 lbs. of hay. Clean

out bedding. Wisp horses thoroughly. Put on night clothing.

6 p.m. Water. Feed 2 to 3 lbs. of corn with chaff.

8 p.m. Hay-up. 4 lbs. of hay and last feed of 2 to 3 lbs. of corn with chaff.

Approximate Amount of Daily Feed. This syllabus is merely a rough guide, based on 10 lbs. of hay and 14 lbs. of grain, which is ample for a full-sized hunter, 16 to 16-2 hands. A larger horse may have its ration increased, whereas a smaller one would require less. Further, it allows for feeding at least an hour before work, giving no hay before work, and watering before feeding. There is no doubt that many horses are given more corn than they are able to digest. In fact, they suffer rather than benefit from overfeeding. A sound guide is a pound of corn per mile ; i.e. take the total mileage done during a week and divide the number of miles by seven=the daily necessary ration of corn in pounds. Hay, linseed, bran, and to some extent boiled feeds, are additional ; but hard corn in excess of this is liable to overtax an animal's digestion. There is no doubt that if a horse can always have water in his box, he will drink as he desires before his meals. Difficult feeders that will not eat up during the day can be given an increased feed at night, and if not hunting the following day the boiled feed can be given the last thing. The actual programme suggested, of course, only refers to non-hunting days.

Once or twice a week horses should be given a bran and linseed mash at night, provided they are not hunting the next day. As far as possible one should maintain regular hours for feeding and work. Young horses or those that are poor should have their dietary arranged on similar lines, but 4 to 8 lbs. of grain are sufficient, and this modifica-

tion applies equally to animals who are getting little work. But the reduction of corn feed must be supplemented by increased hay or bulk food, from 12 to 16 lbs. per diem.

Poor Horses. A horse that is poor must first drop his stomach, and this is acquired by giving an adequate supply of bulk food. Later, with steady work and gradual increase of the corn ration, these animals will build up their quarters, loins, and necks.

Delicate Feeders. The problem of the delicate feeder requires very careful attention. He should never be given too large a feed at one time. Better results will be obtained by giving six feeds than four, and food left in the manger should always be taken out, a fresh and varied feed being put in its place. His diet must be continually changed, and as far as possible he should be given an increase of any particular feed that appeals to him.

Generally shy feeders will eat best at night, when they are quiet, and in such cases a large feed may be given the last thing.

Carrots. Gratings of carrots mixed with their corn will often tempt fastidious animals.

Beans and peas, limited to 2 lbs. a day for a horse in hard work, may be found more appetising in the place of a similar amount of oats ; but if these are given it is advisable to give 2 ozs. of Epsom-salts in a mash twice a week. A wineglassful of cod liver oil in twice the amount of treacle given daily in a feed besides stimulating the digestion and appetite, is most nutritious.

Regular Hours. Regular hours for exercise and regular times for feeding and quietness are essential.

In some cases horses that refuse their evening feed will become more eager for it if they are led out for fifteen minutes before feeding. No definite

rule can be laid down, it lies really with the groom and his master, who by careful study can find out what the horse appreciates and when he is most inclined to feed.

Avoid Monotony. Filling a manger with the same monotonous food is both foolish and useless. It is only reasonable to consider a horse as a human being in this respect. The latter could easily express his resentment if he was given beefsteak every morning, noon, and night, whereas the horse can only show his repugnance by refusing to eat.

While we are on the subject of the care and feeding of a horse, some few remarks on their general comfort and resultant good health will not be out of place at this juncture.

The Stables. Without going too deeply into the subject of stable buildings, there are certain essentials that should be fully realised.

Stables must be dry and kept clean and free from contaminated air. Draughts are as injurious to horses as to human beings. Fresh air is vital to their good health, and warmth obtained by an extra blanket and bandages on the legs is infinitely preferable to stuffiness. Stables built with a southern aspect have the great advantage of the sunshine, and the more windows they possess the better, as horses thrive in the sun, and light is equally beneficial.

Ventilation. At any time of the day when one enters the stable, the atmosphere should be warm but fresh. Grooms, as a rule, are inclined to keep their stables too hot and shut down the necessary ventilation. Though their horses' coats may look sleek, their general constitution and even their wind may suffer.

Drainage. Good drainage is a most important item, and surface drainage is more efficient and

hygienic than the underground system. The latter requires constant attention and disinfecting.

Floors. The flooring of a stable should never be slippery, should be impervious to wet, as level as possible, with surface drains that can easily be cleaned. The simplest method is a central duct in each box which drains off into a main surface channel outside, and from thence is carried into an underground pipe some considerable distance from the stables. The floor of each box or stall should be aired and thoroughly swept out daily. Pine sawdust may be shaken down before the floor is brushed clean as this will absorb the moisture and have a deodorising effect.

In warm weather the more fresh air in the stables the better, but in the winter most windows must be closed, and ventilators in each box, about a foot from the floor and a foot from the ceiling on the opposite side, permit of the egress of foul air. Where these exist the principle advocated by Parkes is recommended, by which some form of screen, about 3 ft. 6 ins. high, close up against the lower ventilator, will keep the cold air off the horse's heels and protect him when lying down. This screen should be zinc covered or protected in some way.

Though some horses appear to do well in stalls there is no doubt that boxes give added comfort, as they can take gentle exercise which benefits their circulation and the ventilation is more easily regulated.

Hayracks above the horse's head are objectionable owing to the fact that dust and seeds fall into their eyes. The natural way for a horse to feed is off the ground, and there is a theory that the continued neglect of this practice atrophies certain muscles and nerves that may ultimately affect his

wind. It would be difficult to prove this, but in any case hay is best placed on the floor in a corner of the box. If hay-nets are used they may be hung low down, provided a horse does not paw at them. They certainly prevent waste, as the hay does not get trodden into the bedding.

Clean Bedding. A generous supply of bedding is very necessary or some horses will refrain from lying down and thus never rest their legs.

Shoes. Horses should be re-shod or have their old shoes replaced every month. If this is not done the feet will grow too long, putting undue strain on the back tendons of the leg. Also shoes left on beyond this period are liable to cause corns. Hunters' shoes should not weigh more than 10 to 12 ozs. apiece.

Clothing and Bandages. The last item affecting the comfort of a horse is his clothing. He requires a day and a night rug, a roller, a blanket, and a head-collar. Bandages are also required for keeping the legs warm, or in some cases to prevent swelling. An extra set of bandages is needed in winter for drying the legs, and if these are employed as already explained, there should be no cases of mud fever or cracked heels.

When putting clothing on a horse it should be thrown lightly rather in advance of the required position, and then pulled back towards the tail, never the reverse way so as to ruffle the hairs in the wrong direction.

Clipping. Hunters will require clipping during the winter and it is advisable to clip right out the first time, leaving the legs and saddle-mark at the second and subsequent clippings. The hair left on the legs affords protection from scratches in the field and chill air in the stables. If the legs are left unclipped the first time, the hair eventually gets so

thick that it takes a long time to dry. On the other hand, horses whose legs are regularly clipped are more liable to get mud fever in the winter. An extra blanket should be put on after clipping.

Regular Exercise. It should never be forgotten that a horse in his natural state exercises himself and thus ensures proper blood circulation. In a box his scope for movement is of course limited, and in a stall he can merely stand still. Consequently regular exercise is essential, and to keep a healthy horse in condition he should get two hours' exercise a day. This may be reduced when an animal is in a poor state, but to condition hunters and polo ponies it may with benefit be increased to three hours provided the exercise is at a slow pace.

Saddlery. With regard to saddlery, it is economical in the long run to purchase this from such well-known firms as Whippy, Sowter, Champion, and Wilton, Owen, and other well-established saddlers, as the leather and the work put into it will both be sound.

A saddle-room should be kept scrupulously tidy, everything being cleaned and hung up in its proper place. Bits and stirrups should be of steel and not made of some rustless and pliable alloy.

Buckle-fitting bridles are unsightly and only one should be kept for trying any special bit. All steelwork should be kept burnished and if put away should be covered in oil.

Leatherwork of bridles and saddles requires constant attention, and provided that these are regularly kept clean and in order, their reliability and length of life are almost unlimited. Leather must be soft and pliable, and this is ensured by using proper saddle-soap. The bar soap for scouring dirty leather and the soap in a tin for rubbing in daily to keep it in good condition. On

no account should leather saddlery be polished. If it has been neglected it will be necessary to rub dubbin well in on both sides, and after cleaning off any dubbin left on the surface saddle-soap should be applied in the ordinary way.

Care of leatherwork is genuine economy and will repay the original outlay on good saddlery by the number of years that it will remain serviceable. A second-hand saddle in good repair which was made by a well-known firm will fetch only a fraction under the original price paid.

Putting on a Saddle. Finally, the horse-owner should know how to put on a bridle and saddle, which is, amongst others, an important means of avoiding discomfort and minor casualties to his horses.

To take the saddle first :

The channel between the underneath padding is to ensure clearance of the withers and spine ; if a saddle comes down on the former it must be restuffed.

The position of the saddle is dictated by the slope and play of the shoulders and the height of the withers, from which the arch and front should be clear. On most horses there is a natural groove for the girths, these should be pulled up gradually so as not to pinch or ruffle the skin on the flank.

The girths may require pulling up another hole after mounting and should admit two fingers between them and the horse's body.

Putting on a Double Bridle. To put on a double bridle :

First take off the head-collar, then put the reins over the head on to the neck, hold the top of the bridle in the right hand, lifting it over the horse's ears, at the same time slipping the bit and bridoon into his mouth, having previously undone

Plate 9

HUNTERS AT GRASS

THEY SHOULD BE PREPARED BY HAVING THE RUGS LEFT OFF, ONE AT A TIME, EACH AT A WEEK'S INTERVAL. GROOMING SHOULD CEASE, TO LEAVE THE NATURAL GREASE IN THE COAT. CORN GRADUALLY DECREASED TO 3 LBS. A DAY AND HAY INCREASED. WHEN POSSIBLE THE BEST METHOD IS TO BRING HORSES IN AT NIGHT WHEN THE WEATHER IS COLD AND TURN OUT DURING THE DAY. REVERSE THIS IN JULY AND AUGUST WHEN THE FLIES ARE TROUBLESOME. HORSES THUS BROUGHT IN CAN BE GIVEN 3 LBS. OF GRAIN. THIS MAY NOT ALWAYS BE POSSIBLE, BUT IT FACILITATES CONDITIONING AND OBVIATES THE RISK OF OVERHEATING WHEN THEY ARE EVENTUALLY BROUGHT IN AND PUT ON HARD FOOD; A POSSIBLE SOURCE OF NAVICULAR DISEASE. SHOES SHOULD BE REMOVED AND FEET ATTENDED TO, TO PREVENT SPLITTING. MAKE SURE THAT THERE IS AN AMPLE SUPPLY OF WATER.

Plates 10, 11 & 12

PUTTING ON THE BRIDLE AND ADJUSTING THE CURB CHAIN

the noseband. Then fasten the noseband, which should be high enough up to prevent any possibility of pinching the skin between it and the bridoon when the rein of the latter is pulled. Fasten the throat-lash which on no account should be tight. Finally, adjust the curb-chain already attached to the off side curb hook : this must come below the bridoon rings. Now stand facing the horse, twist the curb-chain away from you until the links are smooth ; the last link should be adjusted to the near side hook first, and finally the one selected for the required length, putting the outside of this link on to the hook, so that when the curb-rein is felt the whole of the curb-chain will come in contact flat with the chin groove. The tighter the curb-chain the more severe the action of the bit.

Normally, when the curb-reins are felt sufficiently for the chain to have a bearing on the chin groove, the cheek of the bit should be at an angle of 45 to 60 degrees to the bars of the horse's mouth. With a light-mouthed horse the chain should be looser still, and possibly a leather curb-guard employed. When correctly adjusted the bridoon should just touch the corners of the mouth, and the bar of the bit be midway between the corner teeth and the corner of the horse's mouth. The bar of the bit should be sufficiently wide to give a comfortable clearance on either side of the horse's lips. If too narrow it will pinch the latter, if too wide it will get crooked in the mouth and injure the bars.

The leverage and severity of different types of bits will be discussed in further detail later on.

It is hoped that, if the novice owner follows out the instructions contained in this chapter he will, at any rate, have acquired sufficient knowledge of horsemastership to run his stable on sound lines

Experience bought at the price of ignorance

becomes very costly in horseflesh. Accidents and misfortunes must occur even in the most efficiently conducted establishments, but in many cases one will find that they were avoidable, being due to ignorance or carelessness.

The Stableman. A stableman's vocation differs from most forms of employment. He must be quiet and genuinely interested in horses, taking a pride in their turn-out and performances. His hours are long and he cannot expect to get regular afternoons off. Really good men are so wrapped up in their charges that they have no other interests and consequently do not find their work irksome. Such men are worthy of good wages and consideration on the part of their employers.

CHAPTER III

RIDING

TYPE of Animal Required for Beginner. We must now consider the type of horse on which the beginner intends learning to ride, and with regard to this it is strongly urged that he should take the advice of a reliable friend. His nerve, confidence, and proficiency as a horseman depend largely upon his first mount. If it is suitable, he will go ahead with lightning strides, whereas with the wrong class of horse the results will at least be slow, probably unsatisfactory and far-reaching.

The type of animal required is such that will give him confidence. This is of vital importance ; hence, reliability is the most essential quality to be looked for. Though there are exceptions, this class of horse should have had considerable previous experience and be preferably somewhere between ten and fourteen years old. In addition to being well trained he must have the right temperament ; his character should be more that of a faithful servant than an impulsive subordinate.

He should be easy to mount and dismount, show no signs of nervousness or any inclination to shy at strange sights and sounds ; have a good mouth, otherwise his rider can have small chance of developing good hands ; be willing to walk, trot, canter, gallop, and jump without requiring expert application of the " aids " on the part of his rider.

Probably a good-class "screw," i.e. a horse that cannot be given a clean veterinary certificate, but is workably sound, is most likely to meet the case. He may be a whistler, or possibly come out a bit stiff after a day's hunting, but neither of these failings will prevent him from being otherwise desirable. For preference, if this is possible, he should previously have been an inmate of a good stable, where he will have been well cared for and well ridden, and consequently be free from vice and bad habits.

In the case of a child, the rapidity of his progress depends on the degree of confidence he feels in his mount, and the same applies to an older person.

Most of us looking back will recall some particular trusted friend, pony or horse, that gave us supreme confidence and taught us many a lesson. Writing now, I can call to mind a certain grey pony who never turned her head at a fence. She had one disadvantage, common to all small animals, namely, her inability to keep pace when walking with a big horse. Often, coming back from hunting elated but tired, one would jog up level, relapse into a walk and, losing distance yard by yard, jog up again and again while her companion never varied his long, swinging stride.

The next was a bigger chestnut, and I can still feel the supreme delight of being able to turn away from other horses to jump a fence on our own without a moment's hesitation.

Then came a roan horse with a "leg"; but neither this nor any other leg failed him in an emergency, and the scope of his front and shoulders over the biggest fence or drop made this operation mere child's play in the truest sense.

Size of Horse. So many true friends are graven on one's memory; how much we owe to them!

One might almost say a good horse will make a good man. Surely his qualities of courage and fidelity should go far to influence the character of those who ride him. I remember on one occasion in France a well-known corps commander going round his horse lines, when a khaki-clad hero was heard to remark in a rich Irish brogue : " Shure a man that takes the interest he does in his horses can't be altogether wrong." A somewhat negative compliment but nevertheless a true one, for the General was a man who took the keenest interest in his men and horses alike. But let us return to our subject. With regard to the size of the horse, this will depend on the purpose for which he is required and upon the height and weight of the rider. Whereas a 15-2 or 15-3 hand hunter will meet the case for a small light-weight, i.e. one who walks under 10 stone 7 or thereabouts, a man of 13 stone or more will require a hunter between 16 and 16-3 hands, with good strong limbs on which to carry the weight. A hunting-saddle weighs from 12 to 14 lbs., and hunting clothes another 6 to 8 lbs. more than ordinary clothes. These must therefore be added to the rider's walking weight in order to arrive at the amount that the horse will have to carry. Again, a long-legged man requires a higher horse than a short man, and needless to say, if the horse is only required as a hack, the above measurements, which in any case can only be a rough guide, may be reduced by quite four inches.

Temperament. But, as I have already said, infinitely more important in this case than the size of the horse is his temperament, a kind, reliable nature being the one factor that really matters.

We may now consider that the reader is suited with a horse, and that he is eager to learn to ride.

A B C of Riding. At this point the A B C of

riding is all that he will require, and for this purpose we will endeavour to work through each stage, keeping level with the progress that he may reasonably be expected to make.

Mounting. The pupil must begin by learning to mount and dismount correctly. For the first two or three lessons it will be advisable to have a groom standing in front of the horse, holding its head. But once he can mount easily, and provided that the horse is quiet this is no longer necessary. Also for the first month or so it is preferable to use only a snaffle-bridle, and an important detail to be remembered is that the horse should be properly exercised before the beginner commences his lessons.

To mount : Stand level with the horse's near foreleg, facing the saddle, though slightly turned towards the hind quarters. The reason for this is that in the future he may have to mount a less tractable animal that cannot be trusted not to kick at its rider, but once he has acquired the practice of facing the hind quarters this danger can easily be avoided.

Now take up the snaffle-reins in the left hand, dividing them with the second and third fingers ; shorten the reins by pulling them through the fingers, just feeling the horse's mouth. This will make it possible to prevent him moving forward when mounting and when the groom is no longer in attendance. Then, drop the spare end of the rein on the off side and grasp the mane (if there is one), or the crest of the neck above the withers with the left hand. Take the stirrup in the right hand and place the left foot in it, with the toe down to avoid touching the horse's flank. Now place the right hand on the rear cantle of the saddle, from this position spring up off the right foot, using the

hands to assist and support your weight. As you straighten the left knee, change the right hand from the rear to the front of the saddle, carry the right leg over to the off side and drop lightly into the saddle, placing the right foot in the stirrup and taking care that the leather is not twisted. Though the first few attempts may appear ungainly there is no real difficulty in mounting quickly and smoothly with a little practice.

Dismounting. The process of dismounting is equally easy. Shorten up the reins in the left hand as before, again gripping the mane or neck just above the withers, and placing the right hand on the front of the saddle. Pass the right leg over the hind quarters, taking care not to touch the croup ; maintain your balance with the right hand on the rear of the saddle, lower the right foot to the ground and withdraw the left foot from the stirrup.

The Seat. Having mastered the difficulties of mounting we must now pay attention to the seat in the saddle. It is advisable to have a restricted space for the preliminary lesson, and if a riding-school is not available a small enclosed paddock will suffice.

It is said that a horseman's mind and body must be supple, and there is much truth in this. By suppleness of the body from the hips, which ensures control of his balance, the rider is instantly able to adapt himself to any movement of the horse. Correct balance in sympathy with the horse's motion, reinforced by grip of the thigh, knee, and at times the upper part of the calf, is the fundamental means by which the rider retains his seat in the saddle. Suppleness of mind signifies not only ready adaptability, but instinctive anticipation of sudden action on the part of the horse, so that the rider's body, legs, and hands may come into play as

occasion demands. A mind obsessed with the difficulty of controlling the horse and the dread of falling off cannot possibly be supple. Thus we see that the essential mental and physical suppleness are dependent on each other.

Under these circumstances it is obvious that the rider, from the earliest stages, must concentrate on this suppleness and avoid all tendency to rigidness.

Later we will observe how good hands are equally dependent upon this same suppleness of the arms, wrists, and fingers.

Although the seat must inevitably vary in accordance with the particular form of riding required at the time (racing, polo, hunting, show jumping), the beginner must first acquire a good natural seat, and for this purpose the instructor should place him correctly on a horse standing still. In the first place, he should be sitting comfortably on the saddle square to his front. He should next be made to open the legs so as to get well down in the saddle, and on closing them again he should feel that the flat, or inside, of the thigh is close against the flaps of the saddle. The knee should be bent but on no account turned outwards, and the leg below should hang down vertically. The main idea is to place the man on the horse as nature intended that he should sit. No man walks with his knees or the flat of his thighs turned outwards, nor should he adopt this position in the saddle.

On the other hand, some people walk with their toes turned out, or the reverse, and consequently each should ride with his feet at the angle natural to himself. The old idea of insisting on making a man turn his toes in on a horse when he does not do so standing naturally on the ground, introduces rigidness, and in the case of the man who walks with his toes turned in, if told to turn them out

when riding, would result in his pointing his knees outwards, and thus the flat of the thigh would no longer be in contact with the saddle.

Length of Stirrups. Let us now endeavour to discover some guide for the length of the stirrup in conjunction with the natural seat. We have made the rider sit well down in the saddle, and his grip under these conditions will be confined to the thighs. The object of the stirrups is to strengthen the seat, and to obtain the maximum grip, the thigh, the knee, and the upper part of the calf must each be called into play.

The rider as at present posed is riding too long and will appear to be sitting on his fork. If he now grips with the knees as well as the thighs the legs will automatically be shortened and the weight borne on his seat instead of his fork. Now raise the toes, keeping them at the same natural angle, and if the stirrups are adjusted to support the feet we will find that they will be at the required length. We now have the natural seat with the legs brought into the correct position for gripping and there supported by the stirrups.

While standing still he may grip and relax alternately, and by these means he will gradually begin to acquire the foundation of a good natural seat. When gripping, the legs must not be drawn up in a cramped position, and the rider should feel that he is sitting down comfortably in the saddle.

The horse may now proceed at a walk, and although the rider should relax his grip he should, however, keep his knees in contact with the saddle.

Hands and Arms. The position of the hands and arms can now be considered. The latter should hang easily from the shoulder with the upper part of the arms touching the sides; any

attempt to make the elbows touch the waist will produce an unnatural position and rigidness. The upper arm should be parallel to the body, and holding a rein in each hand the forearms should be so placed that both hands are just above the withers, the wrists being slightly rounded outwards so that the palms are turned towards the waist. The reins can be held outside the small or the third finger, thereby maintaining the lightest feeling on the horse's mouth.

At the walk there is no necessity to grip tightly with the knees and no excuse for any stiffness ; the body should be supple from the hips and inclined slightly to whichever side the horse is turned. The arms must be supple from the shoulders, the elbows flexible, the wrist and fingers elastic, giving gently to the horse's mouth. The knee must be bent and on no account stiff, so that the leg below is free to be used as required.

The horse may at first be led, but once the rider feels sufficient confidence he can himself induce his mount to walk by gently touching him with his heels and guiding him with the reins. A slight feeling of one rein, yet retaining contact with the mouth on the opposite side, will make the horse turn in the required direction.

No useful purpose can be served by trotting until the rider has found his seat at the walk, and during the first two or three days he is better employed practising certain suppling exercises at the halt and at the walk. He can bend down on either hand to touch his toes with his finger-tips. He can turn his body from the hips to face to his right and left rear. He can lean his body back until his head touches the horse's croup, with his hands resting on the hips. He should now slowly raise himself to the upright posture by gripping

with the knees and retaining the legs in the correct position.

Again, to prevent any tendency to stiffness of the knees he can swing the lower part of the leg backwards and forwards. By these means he will feel both comfortable and fairly secure in the saddle before commencing to trot.

Rising at the Trot. At this latter pace the rider should make no serious effort to rise but let the horse's action throw him up, when he should incline his body slightly forward as he rises from the saddle, taking care to keep the knee bent so that the leg below remains perpendicular. His weight (raised from the seat of the saddle) should be taken on the knees, and further supported by the stirrups. In the same way his balance will emanate from the knee supported by the stirrups. During one pace of the horse he should remain clear of the saddle, dropping back easily and then thrown up again by the same stride and at the same time to which he originally rose. Strictly speaking, the leg should remain steady and not move forward, but it would be foolish and dogmatic to say that this is always wrong. An experienced horseman riding a hot and excitable horse would purposely adopt a loose seat, refraining from any but the minimum leg pressure, and consequently allow his legs to move forward as he rose from the saddle. However, these conditions will not affect the beginner and this digression is merely to warn him against rule of thumb instructions that sometimes find their way into print.

Turning. When turning at the trot the rider must incline from the hips in the direction of the turn, and the quicker the pace and the sharper the angle the more accentuated must be this inclination of the body.

Cantering. The pupil should be allowed to canter as soon as he is moderately secure in the saddle and has grasped the management of the reins sufficiently to control his horse. This pace is the most comfortable and the least tiring for the beginner. He should sit down in the saddle, relaxing the muscles of his body so that it responds to the " throw " of the horse's action, at the same time retaining sufficient grip with the knees and thighs and keeping the lower part of the leg vertical.

Riding Without Stirrups. As soon as he has confidence at the trot and canter he may ride for a short period without stirrups, care being taken that he does not attempt to retain his seat by means of the reins. Riding without stirrups will strengthen his grip, assist him in keeping his balance, and gradually give him confidence. On no account should he be allowed to grip with the ankle or heel.

However, before attempting to ride without stirrups the beginner must be capable of controlling his horse. In the first place, he must know how to create the necessary impulsion.

(A) To make the horse walk : Close the legs and leave the reins free.

(B) To trot : Increase the pressure of the heels and legs whilst keeping light control with the horse's mouth.

(C) To canter : Still stronger pressure of the legs and heels, at the same time restraining the horse with the reins, which will make him break into a canter.

(D) To stop : Increase the feeling of the reins, leaning the body back, and say " woa."

(E) To turn to either hand : Maintain a stronger feeling of the rein on the side to which the turn is to be made, keeping contact with the mouth

on the opposite rein which should be pressed against the horse's neck.

The Gallop. On the first occasion that the rider gallops he should select a slight gradient uphill on the grass. This will give him confidence in his powers of control both physically and mentally. He should first shorten his reins as he will require to lean forward and keep contact with the horse's mouth, and this position will automatically necessitate a shorter length of rein. He must stand up in his stirrups, increase the grip of his knees on which he must support his balance, with the body leant forward and the weight taken off the back of the saddle.

There is no advantage in attempting to jump before the beginner feels reasonable confidence in himself at the ordinary paces. He should gradually acquire security and control when on the move, having strengthened his grip and sense of balance by riding occasionally without stirrups for short periods, and suppled his body and his knee-joints by means of the suppling exercises.

If jumping is commenced too soon, we are liable to defeat our primary object, " confidence." Unsteadiness of the seat and consequent rough handling of the horse's mouth will result in the animal either jumping awkwardly or even refusing.

CHAPTER IV

USE OF THE HANDS AND LEGS

SYMPATHETIC Hands. We must now gradually become more exacting in the action of the rider's hands and the application of the legs in conjunction with the finer adjustment of his balance.

It is a common saying that " only few people are born with good hands," and one might add that a large percentage of these are women. In any case really good hands depend upon many factors. Undoubtedly some people possess this attribute in the same way that some are born with a good touch on the piano, and deft draughtsmanship comes naturally to the artist. But in the case of a horseman, light hands may be spoilt by learning to ride on a bad-mouthed horse. It is by an early appreciation of the light mouth that good hands can be acquired. They further depend upon a good and secure seat and a temperament in sympathy with the horse.

Man, having a higher intelligence than the animal, must be prepared to make allowances for the meaner intellect of the latter. This entails unlimited patience and careful study of the horse's psychology. Normally, a horse prefers comfort to discomfort, so there must be some definite reason why he should cause pain to his mouth through pulling. An animal will pull in the hands of a clumsy rider and apparently go perfectly quietly

with a real artist in the saddle. What is the reason for this? The expert concentrates on putting himself on good terms with his mount, is gentle and restrained in his action with the reins, and the horse is immediately responsive. This is what is generally accepted as a sympathetic understanding of the horse.

There are animals, of course, whose mouths have been permanently ruined, and although they may improve in good hands they will never become pleasant rides; the reason being that they have, to all intents and purposes, been taught to pull by continually having been ridden on a tight rein.

If we accept the limited intelligence of the horse, we arrive at the obvious conclusion that he can only learn one thing at a time and we must not show undue haste in our attempt to teach him the particular lesson that we wish him to master. Once accomplished, he will never forget it. Later on, when we come to dealing with the training of a young horse, we will realise the force of this argument.

Misunderstanding. All that we desire now is that the rider shall consider the reins as a means of conveying his intentions to his mount. We must assume that the animal in question is well trained, willing to obey, and merely requires that these silent orders may be given simply and sympathetically. For example, to retard his pace, feel the reins—to stop him, feel the reins more firmly, and when halted relax the feeling. This is simple and easily understood; but if the rider inadvertently chucks his horse in the mouth when the latter is not required to stop, what impression can it make on the animal's brain? He becomes mystified, and if hurt, he will certainly resent the treatment and the

essential sympathy between the rider's hands and the horse's mouth will be lost.

It is difficult for a beginner to realise the extreme effect of mismanagement of the reins ; but continuous " rough handling " will have a disastrous result on a horse's mouth and temperament, and may eventually lead to loss of ready obedience and easy control.

Again, should the rider desire to turn to one side, the message is conveyed by feeling one rein and gently keeping contact with the mouth on the opposite side, but should the rider in this case, to secure his balance, suddenly tighten one rein and yet have no desire to turn in that direction the result is equally disconcerting for the horse.

At this stage there is no question of the rider instructing his mount in this wordless conversation ; the latter is in somewhat the same position as a blind man reading Braille, but if the words are turned topsy-turvy, or the wrong signals are given, both are at a loss.

Throughout the various and more advanced stages of horsemanship we can ensure simplicity by always applying the signals in the same way and the feeling of the reins in the same degree when required for each definite purpose. This is what is understood as simplicity in conveying our intentions to the horse.

Sympathetic handling of the reins is synonymous with good hands and these can at any rate be developed and improved.

Confidence Essential. A reasonably secure seat is essential ; apart from being the means of remaining in the saddle independent of the reins, it promotes confidence. If the rider lacks this vital quality of good horsemanship he will continually

be suspicious of his horse and, probably imagining that he is liable to run away, he will constantly be putting unnecessary restraint on his mount. From this condition of affairs has arisen the saying :

" A horse never pulls at you unless you pull at him," and under these circumstances we can see the truth of this remark. It may not apply to confirmed pullers, but we are not at this period dealing with that category. Thus we arrive at another definite requirement :—Confidence, ensured by a firm seat.

Length of Rein. From this we reach the following conclusion : ride with as long a rein as is compatible with the maximum amount of control, but this must not be mistaken for allowing the reins to flop about loosely. For adequate control, there must be contact with the horse's mouth, though with a very light mouth this contact will be little more than the actual weight of the reins. As explained in the previous chapter, the reins should be shortened to gallop, owing to the fact that the rider's body is leant forward. But without exception every really fine horseman will be found to ride with what may be best described as a graceful length of rein. This becomes especially apparent in polo. If you watch a first-class match you cannot fail to draw similar conclusions. This liberty of rein as demonstrated by the best horsemen is a dual example of confidence and sympathy. Thus we perceive that there are very definite mental attributes essential for good hands. Sympathy—simplicity—confidence, and I need hardly add—patience.

Suppleness. But the physical attributes are equally important, and we will now endeavour to elucidate these. In addition to a secure seat, with

suppleness of the body from the hips and of the arms from the shoulders, there must be suppleness of the elbows, wrists, and fingers. The shoulders and elbows give that extra freedom of rein required over fences. With a fair length of rein the rider's upper arm when sitting normally should be approximately parallel with his body. To avoid the ugly habit of sticking the elbows out, the old-fashioned practice was to insist on their touching the sides. But the strenuous efforts to maintain them in this position unfortunately made the rider stiff and cramped, a condition which should at all costs be avoided. If the arm is allowed to hang down naturally the upper part will touch the sides, which is an easy and comfortable position. Under these conditions, when holding the reins in both hands, the latter will be placed just above the withers, not clenched tightly together but separated by three or four inches. The wrists should be slightly rounded so that the back of the hands are turned towards the horse's mouth and the fingers holding the reins bent inwards. The springy action of the fingers and wrists either backwards or forwards, to relax or retain pressure respectively, is thus adjusted to coincide with the play of the neck and jaw in a light-mouthed horse. Once this position is adopted, the tendency to keep a dead pull on the horse's mouth is minimised.

The Voice. In the more advanced stages of horsemanship it will be shown that the hands and legs should normally be applied simultaneously, the hand controlling the horse's forehand and the rider's leg the hind quarters. But this is not required of the beginner at this stage. Nevertheless he must realise that his hand on the bridle controls the impetus and direction of his mount. The mouth of a well-broken horse is a very delicate

organism, and when we take into consideration the weight, vitality, and impulsion that are controlled through this medium, we begin to realise the extreme necessity for light and sympathetic hands. But even a light-mouthed horse, if he is fresh, excited, or frightened, may temporarily show a tendency to pull, and under these circumstances a soothing tone of voice and gentle handling will restore his mental equilibrium, whereas rough handling would certainly have the opposite result. While on this subject, it is as well to stress the importance of the voice as a means of reassurance and to reinforce signals given by the reins.

Holding the Reins. Although it is advisable for the pupil to commence riding and jumping in a snaffle, it is as well while we are discussing " hands " to explain how the reins of the double bridle should be held.

In the first place the action of the snaffle is comparatively mild, as it bears largely on the corners of the horse's mouth, though to some extent on the tongue and outer edges of the bars of the mouth.

On the other hand the curb-bit, owing to its lever action, the upper branches being attached to the curb-chain against the chin-groove, is infinitely more severe, and has a direct bearing on the very sensitive bars. On this account feeling on the curb-reins must be as light and elastic as possible. When the reins are held in both hands the bit (or curb) rein should be around the little fingers and the bridoon (or snaffle) round the third fingers. The reason for this is that the little finger is the most sensitive and by turning the back of the hands (facing the horse's mouth) downwards the minimum degree of feeling exerted by the little finger is

produced on the horse's mouth. By rounding the wrists inwards the degree is increased; bringing the hands closer to the body by bending the elbows still further emphasises the feeling on the mouth, actual contact with the reins being still maintained at the point of maximum suppleness—the little finger.

A few horses that have genuine snaffle mouths, i.e. flex, bend, and respond instantly to the snaffle, may be ridden in this bridle. If ridden in a double bridle, care must be taken not to impose unnecessary feeling on the bit; the bridoon in this case should be round the little finger and the bit-reins round the third.

When holding all the reins in one hand (the left) the left reins should be held as already explained, the right reins being divided by the first finger, the spare ends of both reins being crossed in the palm of the hand. This method of holding the reins will prevent them from slipping, and by manipulating the wrist it will be found that they can be shortened on either the right or left side. Another method is to separate the left reins with the little finger, as above, the second finger dividing the right reins and the spare ends being held between the first finger and the thumb. Though this gives less play of the hands to feel the right side of the mouth and the reins are also more liable to slip, it is, at the same time, easier to shorten them by drawing them through the fingers with the right hand. The rider should frequently practise both methods as explained, at a walk, so that he will experience no difficulty later at faster paces.

One can get some idea of the leverage of the curb by taking a pencil approximately the same length as one of the arms of the bit and placing it on a table. Now put the back of one finger on the

Plates 13, 14 & 15

METHODS OF HOLDING THE REINS

HOLDING THE REINS IN BOTH HANDS WITH THE CURB REIN OUTSIDE THE LITTLE FINGER.

REINS IN ONE HAND AND SPARE END CROSSED IN THE PALM OF THE HAND.

SAME AS CENTRE BUT SPARE END LAID OVER THE FIRST FINGER AND MAINTAINED BY PRESSURE OF THE THUMB.

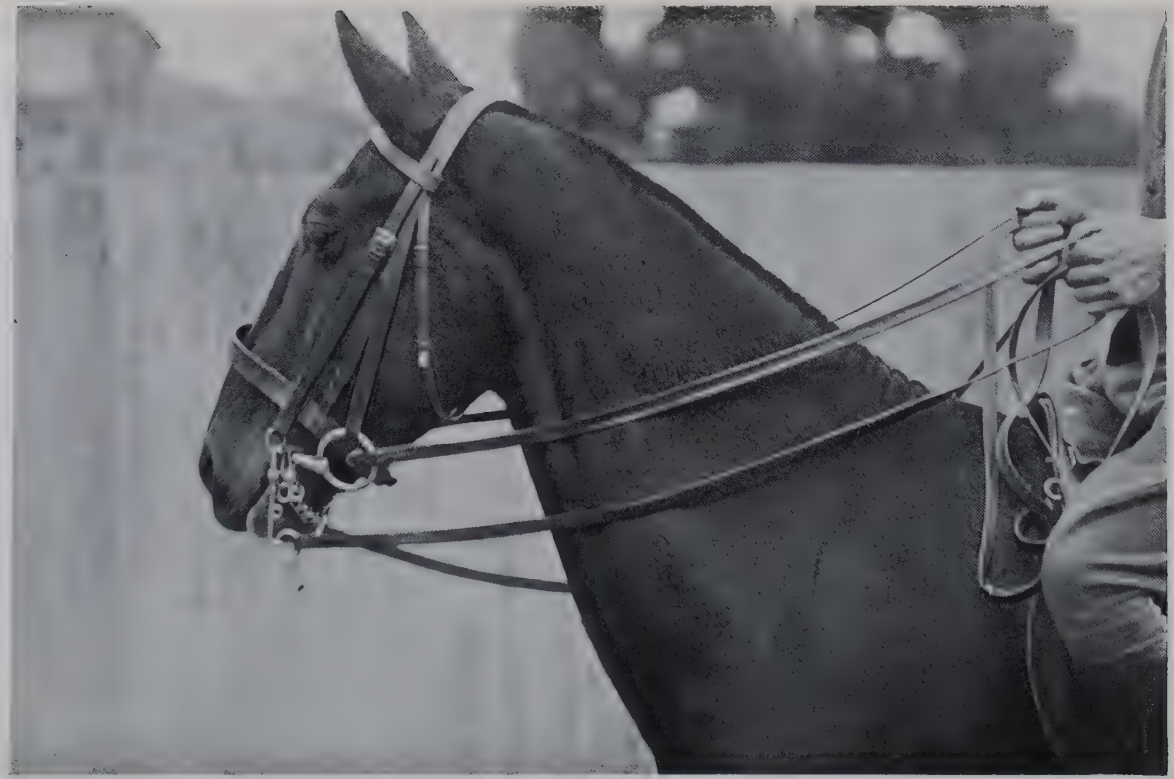


Plate 16

A METHOD OF HOLDING THE REINS, OF USE IN MAKING A YOUNG HORSE'S MOUTH

IN THIS PICTURE THE WIDTH OF THE RIDER'S HANDS SEPARATES THE CURB AND BRIDOON REINS. THUS, BY A TURN OF THE WRISTS A FEELING CAN BE MAINTAINED ON EITHER AS REQUIRED. *See chapter xii.*

pencil at the point where the bar of the bit is attached to the arms—about two inches from the end. Pick up the pencil with the other hand at the longer end (i.e. where the rein is attached to the arm), pressing down with the back of the finger as explained. One finds considerable ease in lifting the pencil up at the longer end and very perceptible pain against the knuckles caused by the pressure of the pencil. This is only a mild degree of what is experienced by the horse.

Legs. With regard to the use of the legs, for the first three or four weeks the pupil will be more or less a passive rider, merely learning to obtain a secure seat, balance, and suppleness. But as he makes progress, he must learn how to apply the lower part of his leg to assist in the control of his horse.

For this purpose it is of the utmost importance to keep the knee-joint flexible so that the rider can close his legs to urge on his horse at each pace without disturbing his seat and balance. There is a tendency with beginners to point the toe downwards in order to keep the feet in the stirrups ; this is wrong and results in a weak and ugly seat, and the likelihood of urging on the horse when least required by unintentional pressure from the heel. Should the leathers be actually too long and he attempts to shorten them, though still continuing to keep the toe down, he will merely achieve an even uglier and more cramped seat. He should concentrate on forcing his heels down and raising his toes, when the stirrups may be adjusted if they now appear too long. Though he may thus be able to alter the leathers a couple of holes the position of the knee will not be changed nor the seat affected, but at the same time it will be strengthened and he will more easily retain his stirrups. If the

foot is not right home in the stirrup, the heel can be more easily depressed and the toe raised, which in spite of shortening the leathers will allow the same length of leg to be applied to the horse. The rider should endeavour to bring pressure to bear on the inside of the stirrup so that the sole of the foot is turned slightly outward away from the horse. In this position, the greater the pressure on the irons the closer the knees are forced against the saddle. This becomes more apparent when standing in the stirrups at the gallop, but under all conditions the seat will be strengthened by adopting this method.

Judging the Correct Length for Stirrup Leathers. There are two rough rules for judging the correct length of the leathers.

(A) Adopt the natural seat as explained, and the bars of the stirrup-irons should be level with the ankle-bones.

(B) Before mounting, measure with the arms; the bottom of the stirrup to the top of the leather should reach from under the arm to the tip of the fingers.

We will not at this stage consider the alternative lengths of stirrup and variations in the seat for different purposes.

In a later chapter on school riding it is further demonstrated how both lateral and diagonal control of the horse's movements are obtained by increased leg pressure on one side. But as far as we are concerned at present the correct position of the lower part of the leg (hanging down vertically) and the flexibility of the knee and ankle are essential, both for the retention of the stirrups and the proper adjustment of the rider's balance especially when it is required to use the leg to obtain impulsion—i.e. to urge on the horse. Any

tendency on the rider's part to keep the leg below the knee forward of the vertical line and absence of flexibility of the joint will certainly nullify the possibility of obtaining the above requirements.

CHAPTER V

JUMPING LESSONS (RIDERS)

FIRST Attempt. Before actually starting his first jumping lesson, the pupil should hack about for an hour or so. By so doing he and his mount will have an opportunity of getting on terms with each other, and the former will have shaken himself down in his saddle and relaxed his muscles. He will thus be feeling at ease and secure at the canter, at which pace the first lesson over fences should commence. On an easy-jumping horse, ridden over a small fence at a canter, there is no violent "feeling" at the take-off. Once the rider appreciates this, he will soon gain confidence. Before actually taking a fence, he should canter round on a large circle, the instructor merely confining his criticisms to the correct position of the legs, suppleness of the hips and sufficient freedom of the reins to prevent any possibility of the horse's mouth being interfered with when he jumps.

Jumping at the Canter. In order to guard against any risk of refusal or running out, a fence with wings and about a foot high will be sufficiently large. The rider should be warned to grip with his knees, to sit upright and not attempt to lean back until after the horse has made his spring. He should then canter freely forward at right angles to the centre of the fence. Provided that he is neither stiff in the knees nor the loins, he will find, after the

first few attempts, that he encounters little difficulty in retaining his seat. In fact he will be delighted at the ease with which he negotiates the obstacle at this pace, and nothing more difficult need be attempted for the next few days. All we require is that he should jump under the simplest possible conditions and secure confidence from the start. Should he, at this period, have any difficulty in retaining his stirrups the leathers may be shortened one or two holes, the toes being raised for this purpose and care being taken that his seat is not cramped.

Once he appears to have confidence we must progress a stage further. The rider must learn to jump bigger and more varied types of fences at different paces, when it will be found that the operation is not so easy.

Again we should commence with a small fence, about eighteen inches high, or possibly a low bank over which it is desired to jump at a slow canter or trot. Under these conditions the pupil must learn to lean slightly forward as the horse takes off, allowing the body to resume the normal position as he lands. This requires more exacting criticism on the part of the instructor. In the first place, he should make the rider canter round as before, but, instead of sitting down in his saddle he should lean forward, supporting his weight on his knees and the stirrups without using the reins to retain his balance.

The Quest of Balance. At first he will find some difficulty in doing this, particularly if he is inclined to be stiff at the knees. These must be kept bent and flexible, as the position of the leg below will influence the rider's balance according to whether it is correctly placed or not. If the leg is too far back the rider will be perched on his fork ; or, what is more probable, the lower part of the leg

being too far advanced with the knee rigid, the rider will be straining unsuccessfully to get his body and balance forward. Further, it is essential that the heels are kept down and the soles turned slightly outwards to obtain the maximum support from the stirrups. Considerable perseverance is needed, as, until this balance is acquired with ease and confidence, little progress will be made. These points once mastered, there is no reason why a beginner should ever be jumped off.

Once both the instructor and the pupil are satisfied, the latter should be allowed to jump a fence with his balance as explained ; let him jump first at a canter and later at a trot, resuming the natural position as he lands.

Result of Control of Rider's Balance. He will now be under the impression that he has learnt two different ways of riding over fences, but in reality, he is beginning to master the more difficult part of the problem. By being able to approach the fence at a slow pace, and by keeping his balance forward as the horse takes off, he will have overcome two natural tendencies.

(A) He will not be left behind, his horse appearing to jump away from him, which is a very common fault.

(B) He will not give his horse a chuck in the mouth through being thrown back unawares.

If he were always to ride a free horse at speed over plain-sailing fences he might possibly have continued with the seat and balance employed in his first lessons, when we were merely endeavouring to secure his confidence. However, there will be many occasions out hunting, e.g. jumping in and out of a lane, or with a very short run, when he must be able to " go " with his horse as explained above. To prove the necessity for this, allow him

Plate 17

WHEN BALANCE IS SUFFICIENT

PROVIDED A HORSE JUMPS AS THE RIDER ANTICIPATES, GRIP IS ALMOST UNNECESSARY AS BALANCE WILL SUFFICE.

Plate 13

WHEN GRIP IS NECESSARY

BUT WHEN THIS IS NOT THE CASE WE SEE THE NECESSITY FOR GRIP.

Plate 19

THE RIDER "LEFT BEHIND"

THE RIDER LEFT BEHIND AND THE SUBSEQUENT ACTION OF THE HANDS MAY PRODUCE EVEN WORSE RESULTS ON A LIGHT-MOUTHED HORSE THAN IN THE CASE SHOWN HERE.

Photo. Mondial

Plate 20

THE RIDER "GOING WITH" HIS HORSE

THE RIDER GOING WITH HIS HORSE AND READY TO GIVE HIM THE REIN HE REQUIRES.

later on to jump at a trot, leaning back before the horse takes off, and no further proof will be required.

Naturally this control of the body and fine adjustment of balance will not be acquired in one day, but it is surprising how easily and rapidly it is achieved if the above procedure is adhered to.

The beginner's confidence is now redoubled. By degrees he will realise that, as long as his horse jumps, no matter whether the pace be fast or slow, he will require very little grip provided he has control of his own balance. In fact, a strong grip is only necessary in the case of a horse attempting to refuse or run out, or when making a blunder.

Once the rider has acquired this forward balance, and can adopt it instantly when required, he should learn to do so just as his horse takes off. When he can do this successfully, he has achieved the art of " going with " his horse over fences.

When an Animal is Liable to Refuse. With a horse that is liable to refuse, it will be necessary to sit well down in the saddle, driving him on with the legs, and only leaning the body forward as he takes off. Under these circumstances it is more difficult to be in time with the horse as he springs, and frequently the rider will find himself thrown back unnecessarily far when he must allow the reins to slip through his fingers. However, provided he is suitably mounted, these conditions should not arise with a beginner, who should appreciate the fact that his seat in the saddle is in no way dependent on leaning back. By being in balance with his horse as he takes off, that is, leaning forward with his seat just clear of the saddle, he will have countered the " punch " of his mount's hind quarters as he springs, and it is this " punch " that unsaddles the rider. He may fall later if the horse pecks, but even in this case he is in a position to

lean back on landing should he wish. By being thus balanced in the initial stages of the jump he ensures control of his body throughout. If he is still insecure when the horse takes off, owing to his inability to adjust his own balance, he will be liable to pull at the reins, which will have unfortunate results, and the effect may be so violent as to hurt the horse's mouth and make him refuse.

Assistance to Retain Balance when Jumping. Under these circumstances a beginner may be allowed to ride with both reins in one hand, using his other hand (below the reins) to pull himself forward and down with the neck-strap of a martingale or a lock of the mane; by this means he will gradually find his balance; then by degrees diminishing his grip on the mane as he acquires control of his body, he will eventually be able to hold one hair without breaking it.

The Action of the Hands. Working on the lines advocated, we concentrate first on confidence, and secondly on the quest of this essential balance at the actual time of the animal's spring. When these are obtained there is no real difficulty in connection with the hands, because their displacement is largely due to lack of proper equilibrium.

On no account should the rider endeavour to balance himself by throwing up his hands; the method described of utilising the mane will prevent this from the start. Under normal conditions when jumping he should ride with the reins in both hands, which should be held low and well separated.

A Horse Pecking on Landing. When correctly balanced (for the horse's take-off), the hands should be drawn in towards the waist with sufficient length of rein to maintain light contact with the horse's mouth. As his mount requires more liberty when landing, the rider can ease the reins

by letting his hands go forward. All horses demand freedom of their heads to spread themselves over a large fence, and nothing tends to spoil a good jumper more than restriction of this liberty. If, on the other hand, the rider is galloping at a fence and leaning back over a big drop, which is not an uncommon occurrence out hunting, he must allow the reins in this case to slip through his fingers as he is not in a position to let his hands go sufficiently far forward. One must not imagine that one can save a horse when pecking on landing by holding his head up with the reins. Some misguided individuals still believe that this is possible, but in actual fact, a horse requires all the rein he can be given to keep on his legs. The rider can save himself by leaning back, but even if he is not doing so he will not incommode his horse, if he gives him his head and supports his own weight on his knees which are not in advance of the horse's centre of gravity. Needless to say his knees must not leave the saddle, and under these circumstances a good strong grip is absolutely necessary.

Jumping without Reins or Stirrups Merely to Gain Confidence. As the rider makes progress, and provided there is a suitable place, he should occasionally jump without holding the reins, but his arms should be either folded low in front of him or his hands gripping his breeches above the knees. By this means his balance will be under the same conditions as if his hands were in front and actually holding the reins.

He may also occasionally ride over fences without stirrups, but beyond the fact that this will give him confidence it will not necessarily help him to ride with his feet in the irons. It is frequently noted that recruits in the Army generally ride quite well over fences with their stirrups crossed

and arms folded ; yet the same men will not put up such a good show when asked to ride in the ordinary way. This points to the fact that there is little advantage really beyond giving confidence, as we must ultimately learn to ride across country utilising our reins and stirrups.

Use of the Legs. As already stated, the beginner will soon realise that very little grip is necessary when jumping as long as his own weight and balance are properly adjusted. This confidence will prevent him from adopting a cramped and rigid position, which is most important, as the lower part of the leg, with the knee flexible, must be free to urge on the horse as required, and the rider should be taught to use the leg for this purpose.

When jumping at the trot, he should be told to close his legs to his horse just as the latter takes off ; at the canter, two strides before the take-off and at the final spring, the instructor calling out One ! Two ! Three ! at the required strides and the pupil responding to the time indicated. If he finds difficulty in doing this, he should again have recourse to the martingale strap or the mane to give him confidence. With this assistance he will very soon learn to apply the legs as required.

As he makes due progress, he should practise riding over as many types and sizes of fences as possible. The pace should also be varied ; sometimes he should be instructed to sit still over a fence and at others to drive his horse on with his leg.

If the lessons are carried out in the above sequence, he will be found to have gradually merged from the passive to the active stage of riding. Once he is well advanced in the latter, he is really becoming independent and will soon be competent to ride different horses under varying conditions. This experience will prepare him for

more advanced horsemanship, when, instead of being a pupil, he will be fitted to instruct and school a young horse.

No definite time can be laid down for reaching this stage; a natural horseman, with the right temperament and conformation, will, in less than six months, acquire a standard that may take another man a whole year to achieve.

CHAPTER VI

RIDING TO HOUNDS

THE Fox-hunter's Obligations. There is no doubt that many people who come out with hounds are unaware of the conditions which enable hunting to be carried on in this country. In the first place, the expense of maintaining a hunt being very considerable, a Master has to contribute a large sum from his own resources ; also it must be remembered that his work and responsibilities are arduous and not unmixed with anxiety at times.

In addition, a committee must guarantee him a certain sum, and they are responsible for collecting this. Consequently in most hunts, a minimum subscription, in the form of a tax per horse, is agreed to. But it is left to the generosity and support of those who are blessed with this world's goods to increase their subscriptions and thus assist in ensuring the financial stability of the hunt. If one makes a comparison of the price we may give for a grouse moor and the amount we subscribe to a hunt, and a further comparison of the number of days' hunting in a season as compared with those spent behind the butts—obviously further comparisons are unnecessary !

Also, many fail to realise that the pursuit of the fox, followed by a large field of galloping horsemen, must inevitably do damage to fences and, later in the season, to the land. Our sport is therefore

dependent upon the courtesy and goodwill of landowners and farmers, some of whom may not be able to hunt themselves. We owe a great deal to the farmers, who are often at their wits' end to maintain their farms with a credit balance. In spite of this, with few exceptions, they are nearly all supporters of hunting, and the greatest consideration and courtesy are due to them from all fox-hunters.

Not long ago I heard a rich foreigner remark: "It's disgraceful the wire about here. The country isn't fit to ride over." Admittedly very true comments, but to understand the problem we must consider it from the farmer's point of view. In this case the wealthy foreigner did not know the farmer in question, though he was quite prepared to ride over his land and, in fact, was under the impression that he had an absolute right to do so. Incidentally, he never bought any farm produce or forage from the farmer, as his groom purchased the latter from a contractor. Furthermore, he never attempted to say "good morning" to the farmer as he did not know him by sight, though he was only too eager to jump his fences. Obviously if all the field were on the same terms with the farming fraternity, one can imagine how impossible the situation would become, especially in these days when a slump in agriculture prevails throughout the country, and unfortunately barbed-wire is the cheapest form of fencing.

Fortunately this is not the case, but undoubtedly there is a very large proportion of people who hunt without ever considering the position of the farmers. In most countries there may be cases of agriculturists who, if not actually hostile to hunting, are certainly not in sympathy with it, and if one could trace the reason, it would frequently be

found that it was due to some unfortunate occurrence or avoidable lack of tact. There are a few really difficult cases of stubborn opponents to hunting, but they are remarkably scarce and their hostile attitude is thoroughly distasteful to the farming community at large.

Those who take up fox-hunting should therefore realise their obligations to the farmers, go out of their way to make friends with them and, whenever possible, do them a good turn. As a class, they are the best fellows in the world and thoroughly appreciate any courtesy that is theirs by right. So our advice to the beginner is—never jump unnecessary fences as it is unfair to the farmers. No doubt your reply will be : " Oh, but my horse won't even touch the fence ! " The answer to that is, that though yours may not, there will possibly be fifty others following on your heels and a subsequent examination of the fence would open your eyes to the results of your thoughtlessness.

Of course when hounds are running, take your fences where you meet them and no one will ever object. Never ride over sown land, young crops such as beans, wheat, winter oats, or young clover. Anyone will show you what they look like, and if you have to cross a sown field, make it a rule always to ride close alongside the fence.

Whenever you are the last man, shut the gate to prevent cattle straying ; this is especially important in the case of any enclosure adjoining a road. Give your second horseman strictest orders never to jump any fences, to shut all gates, and to ride with the hunt's second horsemen. As long as you adhere to these rules, you will be doing the smallest possible amount of damage and will be a genuine supporter of hunting.

Before Hunting. The number of days that you

are able to hunt per week will depend upon the size of your stud. A hunter in a galloping country should certainly come out three days a fortnight, and a fit horse carrying a light-weight may even come out twice a week provided they are not long days or when ridden first horse.

Always consider the day before hunting which horse or horses you intend to ride on the morrow. By so doing you will ensure that a mash is not given the night before to a horse that has to hunt. In addition, you can assure yourself that your mount is fit and well and not off his feed. Never take a horse out hunting if he is off his feed or if there is any heat in a leg, even though he is not lame. It is more than probable that he will be, if you fail to take note of Nature's warning.

Your groom should also look round the shoes, see that none is loose, or possibly some of the clinches may require knocking in. (The clinch is the upper part of the nail that comes out through the wall of the hoof. The ends are broken off and bent down flush with the wall. If these work up the shoe will become loose, and any projecting on the inside are most liable to injure the fetlock of the opposite leg.) The inner edge of the hind shoes, which should be rounded off (concave) by the shoeing-smith, will, with wear, again become sharp, and unless attended to, your horse may get a serious over-reach, possibly cutting through the back tendon, though an injury to the heel is more common. Your groom must have the strictest orders never to send a hunter out with a sharp inner edge to the hind shoes ; accept no excuse from the shoeing-smith, who may endeavour to explain that he is unable to round off a cold shoe without removing it. If you insist, and you certainly must, it will be done.

On the morning of hunting your horse should have a full drink the first thing and a feed of corn. If the meet is near at hand, he may have another small drink and a second small feed a clear hour before he starts, though this will not be possible at the more distant meets.

Some animals realise when they are being prepared for hunting and may not feed in consequence. In such cases, make as little change as possible in their normal stable routine, and such attentions as plaiting of manes should be left to the last moment.

When riding or sending horses on to the meet, the average speed should not exceed six miles an hour.

Insist on your hunters being turned out smartly. A good groom will take pleasure in doing this and a less experienced individual should be encouraged to do so. It is almost as important to be particular about your own equipment, as it is a reasonable compliment to the Master who is at pains to turn his hunt servants out neatly, and is naturally gratified if the general appearance of his field does him credit.

At the Meet. Before mounting, have a look at your horse's bit and curb-chain, and when in the saddle make sure that your girths are pulled up. Satisfy yourself that there is no pressure on the horse's withers; this should not occur with proper supervision in the stable, but if by any chance it is the case, you will either have to change the saddle or put a knitted woollen pad under the front arch.

On a cold morning do not let your horse stand shivering in the wind. Give him an opportunity to stale, then let him walk about whilst waiting for hounds to move off. Do not ride to where you believe hounds are going to draw first. Your

presence and that of others at the covert side may result in the fox going away before hounds arrive, or you may find that the draw has been changed and you are deservedly left out of the hunt.

While Hunting. When hounds are drawing, the field will be marshalled on one side of the covert or possibly in the middle of a big wood ; this is done to give the fox a fair chance of breaking covert. Stand clear of kicking horses, and if your own is at all doubtful, you must keep him on the outskirts of the crowd and hold your hand behind your back when going through a gateway or when pulling up in a ride. A horse that stamps or kicks in a crowd should have a red ribbon on his tail.

On no account skirt round the covert on your own, with the intention of getting a start. You are liable to head the fox and will incur the justifiable wrath of the Master.

If necessary, hold open a gate for the huntsman and keep on one side of a ride when he has to pass. On the other hand, take an intelligent interest in the proceedings, be ready for the moment when the fox is holloa-ed away and hounds come out of cover to pick up a line. Remember that they must have a chance to settle, and overriding them now will jeopardise the chances of a hunt. You cannot hunt the fox yourself, a singularly obvious fact that is sometimes forgotten by some of the field.

Once hounds have settled to the line you are at liberty to ride to them, not on their sterns, but about one hundred to two hundred yards on the flank and level with the tail hounds. If there is any choice, ride on the downwind side of the pack, as a fox, unless his mask is set for a definite point, is more likely to turn downwind, and if you cannot see hounds at times you may hear them upwind of you.

Whenever possible, select your own place at a fence and ride straight at it to avoid crossing anyone else. Choose a good take-off where the ditch, if one exists, is clearly defined. It is safer than a blind place and less effort for the horse than asking him to jump out of bad going. There will be certain fences that can only be jumped at one or two places ; here you must wait your turn and be careful not to jump until the man in front of you is safely over on the far side.

Hold your horse together over heavy ground, remembering that the good man to hounds is he who can husband his horse's strength and, by going the shortest way, consistently see the end of a hunt. Ride up the furrows on the plough and when possible across a deep ridge and furrow grass field, ride the headland as the better going will save your horse.

When hounds check, or are being cast by the huntsman, stand still, and if your horse has been galloping turn his head to the wind. If the pack, who are endeavouring to pick up a cold line, are surrounded by sweating horses, their efforts will be largely hampered, if not entirely baffled.

When hounds are running, from your position on the flank you should be able to watch the leading couples who will give you the first indication of any variation in their course. At the same time keep your eye on the veterans in the body of the pack, who will frequently put their more impetuous juniors right when scent is catchy.

It so happens that fences vary in type in different countries, and our methods in negotiating these will have to differ accordingly. Great discrimination is required on the part of the rider as to the best way of presenting certain horses, differing considerably in temperament, at their fences.

Experience alone can teach us the best method, but this is dealt with at some length in Chapter VIII.

Let us consider some of the many different varieties of fences that may be encountered. There is one rule that applies to all occasions. As far as possible select a good take-off. You yourself can jump better from a sound piece of ground and the same holds good for your horse.

You may safely gallop on at a low fence with a ditch beyond. On the other hand, should the ditch be on the near side (which may often be blind), or with a take-off that is poached and sloping down towards the fence, keep your horse well in hand, urging him on the last two strides with your legs. Over a trappy blind place, possibly a gap in a bullfinch (a high and practically impenetrable thorn hedge with a ditch on one or both sides), it is advisable to jump from a trot or even a walk.

Generally speaking one should ride slower at a fence with a ditch on the take-off side than the reverse. In the first instance, the practice of checking the pace makes a horse more cautious as to where he is putting his feet on the near side, and in the second, it is an indication that there is or may be a ditch beyond, which cannot be seen until horse and rider are in mid-air. When approaching walls, timber, and gates, i.e. a solid obstacle that necessitates clearing in height but not breadth, one should ride slowly. Even when galloping fast across a field one is well advised to pull back to a collected canter when encountering such obstacles. But one must be sure of checking the pace about fifteen to twenty yards before the fence, and not when actually close up to it. This precaution is necessary to ensure the horse having his head free before he takes off, so that he can lower it, adjust

his stride, and have free play of the muscles required for jumping.

Care must be taken not to check a horse in the act of jumping, especially when ridden in a curb-bit, as this will prevent him extending himself, which is so essential in a hunter.

If we are riding at some stout posts and rails and have accordingly steadied our horse about twenty yards from the fence, when we discern a wide ditch beyond, we must drive him on vigorously with our legs so as to ensure the necessary momentum to clear the whole. Over a drop, although the rider leans forward as the horse takes off, his body on landing should not exceed the perpendicular to the horse's back. An experienced horseman can feel whether the horse's balance is such that he may possibly pitch on landing, in which case he can sit back. On the other hand, it is possible that he may find it expedient to lean forward if there is any risk of his horse dropping his hind legs in the far side ditch. If, in mid-air, the rider is too far forward or too far back, he is unable to adjust his position and balance as described above. If he lands with his body too forward and the horse overjumps and pecks badly, his weight is thrown in advance of the horse's centre of gravity and both will come to grief.

There is no doubt that a hunter requires freedom of his head, not only to stretch his forelegs over a wide place, but also to save himself if he has blundered on landing, and if the rider is now leaning back he must let the reins slip through his hands. He certainly cannot keep his horse on his legs by holding him up with the bridle.

There are certain countries, as, for instance, Ireland, Devon, and Dorsetshire, that are fenced with banks. These may have a ditch on one or both sides and may be crowned with a hedge.

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 21

"HE'S CROSSED THE RIDE"

By permission of Eyre & Spottiswoode, Ltd. From "Shires & Provences"

Plate 22

THE PYTCHLEY HOUNDS RUNNING OVER BRAUNSTON BROOK

(From a Painting by Lionel Edwards, R.I., A.R.C.A.)

NOTE THAT THOSE OF THE FIELD WHO ARE UP WITH HOUNDS ARE RIDING WELL ON THE FLANK OF THE TAIL OF THE PACK.

Invariably they should be ridden at slowly to prevent the horse attempting to fly them, and at the same time giving him an opportunity to change his legs at the top. Certainly experienced animals can be taught to race over banks, very often merely kicking back as they do over narrow banks in Ireland. But normally, out hunting, falls will be avoided by jumping these slowly. The rider must be sure of giving his horse ample rein so that he may have sufficient freedom to alternate his change of balance, when negotiating these obstacles ; for this reason snaffle-bridles are largely used in Ireland, so as to interfere as little as possible with the mouth.

A line of pollards denotes the presence of a brook, a not infrequent source of grief to many of the field. Often we have little time to make up our minds, but if hounds attempt to jump it, it is safe to assume that a horse can clear it. Once having made our decision we must ride at the brook in a resolute manner or we may fail to inspire our horse for his effort. If the rider is in doubt and presents his horse at the obstacle in a half-hearted manner, the latter will certainly appreciate his master's train of thought and hesitation on his part will spell disaster. As long as the horse means jumping water, it is extraordinary over what width he is capable of propelling himself. It is advisable to pull him together about twenty lengths from the brook, preparing him to adjust his stride for the take-off, then send him on with increased speed for the last few yards, holding him straight at the obstacle. Impetus must be maintained and this will ensure him clearing a good fifteen feet of water. In some countries one finds dykes and big bottoms, down one side of which it is necessary to crawl, then pop over the bottom and

climb up the other side. It is surprising what a horse can jump from a stand, but he must have his head, and the rider should not lay back with his weight on his mount's loins or he will probably drop his legs in the ditch and slip backwards.

When one is unfortunate enough to get a fall, it is a sound principle always to hold on to the reins. It frequently prevents landing on one's head, and the horse cannot gallop away leaving us to trudge after him on our flat feet.

Gates. Apart from jumping, one has to open many gates in the course of a day's hunting, and a man and his horse that are unable to do this, are a nuisance to themselves and to others. Imagine hounds streaming away, you can barely hear their cry in the distance, the whole field are held up at an unjumpable place, and the one gate is being fumbled by a horseman who cannot even get out of the way.

A hunter must be obedient to his rider's legs if he is to be handy opening gates. Pressure on one flank should make him edge away in the opposite direction, and he must also rein back kindly. As soon as the gate is unlatched the horse can be made to push it open with his chest, his rider giving the final shove with the crook of his whip. When pulling back a gate with the latch on the right side, the whip should be held in the left hand, and vice versa. It is quite a common occurrence to see some unfortunate person bungling a gate with a crowd waiting, and solely due to the fact that he is holding his whip in the wrong hand, with the result that his horse's head and neck are in the way.

When jumping in and out of a lane, select your place with reference to the second fence as well as the first and be careful instantly to check the horse

the moment he shows any inclination to turn down the lane to either hand. With the modern tarmac road one will seldom be able to jump in and out unless there is a wide strip of grass on both sides ; under these circumstances it is possible, but one must be careful to jump from a slow pace so as to steady the horse before crossing the slippery road.

When jumping into a road with other horses moving down it, say right-handed, it is advisable to jump the fence at an angle towards the right, as otherwise you will have to turn sharply on the road after landing, and in all probability slip up.

Finally, do not ask a tired horse to jump an awkward, big place, or continue to pursue in a hunt with a young, unfit animal when you honestly realise that you have come to the bottom of him. Seasoned, fit hunters, if ridden with discretion, will see one through the best runs, but it is unreasonable and unfair to ask too much of a youngster not yet fit.

When hounds are breaking up a fox, take the opportunity to relieve your horse of your weight and keep away from hounds.

Returning Home. The condition of your hunters and their readiness to come out again will largely depend on how they are taken home after hunting. In the first place, they should return quietly and, except in the case of an old horse, who feels the hard going, it is less tiring to trot on the road than on the sticky grass sidings with innumerable drains cut from the road to the ditch, over which he is apt to stumble if tired. If you have a long hack home, it is strongly urged that you should get your horse a drink of gruel on the way and he will complete the journey feeling much refreshed in consequence.

If it is not possible to obtain gruel, a bottle of porter mixed in a bucket of chilled water will help him along.

Back in the Stables. In any case gruel should always be prepared in your stable to give to your hunters when they get home.

Once in their box, make sure that they stale before giving them their gruel. While they are being dried they should be allowed some water and hay as this is easily digested. (If a horse is in at all an exhausted condition he should not be given dry corn until the following day—steamed oats in a bran and linseed mash will be as much as he will attempt to eat under the circumstances.) Once the mud and sweat have been cleaned off a bran and linseed mash should be given, and after this, if he is not thoroughly dry, he must be attended to again, so that he will be rugged up with not only his body but his extremities, ears and legs, both dry and warm. Beyond this, he need not be groomed unnecessarily until the following morning. He should now be comfortably settled down with a generous supply of bedding, finally being given a feed of corn.

Your groom should look in at night and make sure that he is dry and comfortable and give him a last feed.

When horses are being dried, they should be carefully examined for any scratches, thorns, or punctures, so that they can be immediately attended to. On the following day their legs should be thoroughly examined to make sure that there is no swelling or heat in any tendon or joint. If the first indications are immediately noticed, early treatment (see Chapter VII) will often prevent avoidable trouble later on.

Let him be led out for half an hour the day after

hunting; this is sufficient exercise and is chiefly beneficial for working off stiffness.

As a last word—it is recommended to buy a hunting-map of the country in which you are resident. This will enable you to get a good idea of the lie of the land, the positions of various coverts, and meets, and the shortest routes thereto.

THE PREVENTION OF DISEASE & THE TREATMENT OF THE MINOR AILMENTS OF HORSES

COLONEL A. C. TODD, C.B.E., D.S.O.
SOMETIME COMMANDANT ROYAL ARMY VETERINARY SCHOOL

CHAPTER VII

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION, AND TREATMENT

THE prevention of disease is far more important than its cure. No injury or disease occurs without a cause and, as a general rule, this may be found out and the risk of similar trouble reduced to a minimum. When a veterinary surgeon is called in to treat an animal, his opinion on the cause and his advice on the prevention should invariably be obtained, as this economic factor, in some instances, may be more valuable to the owner than the successful treatment of the patient. Many examples of this could be mentioned, but the following will probably be sufficient to convince the reader of its importance.

A brewery with a stud of fifty draught horses had to replace approximately ten of them yearly as a result of sprained tendons. At the time, it was looked upon as one of those unavoidable conditions resulting from the haulage of heavy loads over rough and hilly roads.

A curious feature of these casualties was that the best doers were the most prone to the trouble. The system of feeding provided each horse with

15 lbs. of oats daily, a bran mash once weekly, and unlimited hay to eat. It is well known that some horses in such circumstances will not eat more than 14 or 15 lbs. of hay, whilst others will consume up to 20 lbs. daily, in which case there is an abnormal increase in the body weight which is an extra burden on the muscles during work. The hay ration in this particular stud was reduced to 15 lbs. per horse daily, and in due course the casualties from sprains became negligible. From an economic point of view there was a yearly saving of 24 tons of hay worth approximately £90, and 10 horses at £80, less £30 each received for sale—£500.

The relation of body grossness to sprain is not limited to the draught horse and applies equally to hunters, polo ponies, and race-horses. Further, horses which have recovered from sprains and returned to work will invariably break down again if allowed to eat unlimited bulky food.

First-aid Remedies. It is always advisable to have a small stock of first-aid remedies available for the treatment of minor injuries, and these may be obtained from any veterinary surgeon or chemist. For a small stud the following should suffice :—

1 Clinical Thermometer.
2 Aloetic Physic Balls (4 drachms each).
1½ pints of Linseed Oil.
4 ozs. Spirits of Nitrous Ether.
4 ozs. Oil of Turpentine.
1 bottle of Embrocation of any well-known make.
2 ozs. of Vaseline.
1 oz. Tincture of Iodine.
1 oz. of Boric Acid.
2 ozs. of Alum.
2 ozs. of Lysol or Carbolic Acid.
2 packets of Medicated Lint (1 oz. each).
4 „ of Wool (1 oz. each).
1 packet of Carbolized Tow.
4 Surgical Bandages.

This small stock of articles will enable an owner to treat most simple injuries and ailments and to apply a first-aid remedy to others pending the arrival of a veterinary surgeon. Sometimes it is difficult to decide when expert advice is necessary, but if there is any doubt it is advisable and may be more economical in the end to give the animal the benefit of the doubt and send at once for a veterinary surgeon.

In connection with the application of first-aid, it is essential to have some knowledge of nursing as applicable to animals. This consists of an intelligent appreciation of, and kind, prompt attention to, the requirements of the patient. These will not only vary in each case, but may vary during the day in the same case. It is impossible to lay down exact rules for every class of patient, but in giving some general rules and leaving their application to the intelligence of those concerned it is hoped that something useful will be gleaned to relieve unnecessary suffering and promote an early restoration to health.

Sick Box. In selecting a loose box for the accommodation of a sick horse preference should be given to a large, well-ventilated one with a southern aspect and in a quiet situation. Cold lowers the resistance to disease and its evil results are worse when combined with darkness. Winter diseases tend to attack the air passages, and catarrhal affections are always more prevalent during this period. With warmth, good light, and pure air, however, the resistance of the body to these diseases is considerably increased and the danger of complications, which are nearly always serious, lessened. A healthy horse soon accustoms itself to all sorts of noises, but when ill, they are in constant fear of disturbance, making rest and sleep

impossible. This is more noticeable in young and well-bred animals. The box should be fitted with a low half-door to enable the animal to have his head in the open when this is considered advisable. A low medium light is better than a bright one in serious cases, but during convalescence better progress is made in a well-lighted box where the animal can take an interest in outside surroundings.

Ventilation. While it is essential that there should be enough ventilation to ensure purity of air in the box, it is also very important that there should be no draughts. Badly fitting doors and windows are the chief offenders in this respect. The floor draught under the lower half of the box door is usually bitterly cold during the winter and is best countered by laying a movable sawdust sausage on the inner side of the door. Ventilation is best secured at the top as the expired air rises, since it is warmer than that of the atmosphere. A practical and reliable test for the purity of air is the effect produced on the sense of smell when entering the box. If there is no apparent difference from the air outside, it is satisfactory ; but if there is any stuffiness, the ventilation is defective and the windows should be opened sufficiently to ensure purity without undue loss of warmth. The general appearance of the animal should also be considered. If he seems bright and refreshed by more air he may safely be allowed to have it ; but, if he shivers or the coat begins to stare, we may be sure there is a draught or the stable is too cold.

Clothing should be sufficient for warmth and for this purpose should be light as well as warm, so as not to be a burden to the patient or induce sweating. It should be taken off—one rug at a time—and brushed or shaken twice daily. During the late autumn, winter, and early spring two or even

three light rugs, a hood, and warm flannel bandages may be required. The body-roller should not be drawn too tight as this would interfere with the free movement of the chest in breathing.

Grooming. A very sick animal does not require grooming in the usual way, but the feverish and prostrate are always refreshed if the eyes, nostrils, and dock are sponged with warm water and then with cold. The legs should be hand-rubbed and the ears stroked when cold. During convalescence rubbing the body over with a damp hay-wisp and afterwards with a cloth, morning and evening, produces a healthy reaction in the skin.

Bedding. A good bed is essential to comfort. Fresh clean straw has the advantage of cleanliness and sweetness, but in chest cases and several forms of lameness moss-litter or sawdust makes a better bedding, being more readily accommodated to the animal's movements. In all cases it should be level and soft, the soiled portions being frequently removed to keep it dry and free from smell.

Mangers, buckets, and all utensils used in the sick stable or box, should be kept scrupulously clean, the mangers being cleaned out one hour after each feed. Water should always be within reach of the patient especially in diseases accompanied with fever, when it is advisable to take the chill off the water so that the thermometer registers about 80° F. if tested. The water should be changed three times a day or oftener, as the sick often play with and slobber in it. A piece of rock salt should be kept constantly in the manger or, failing this, two to three ounces of salt should be given with the food daily.

Feeding Sick Horses. Food suitable to the requirements of each case should be given. For very sick animals or when the appetite is very capricious it

should be judiciously varied and given often and in small quantities. Any which is not eaten should be removed after it has been left a few minutes before the patient. If it is not eaten from the manger it may be tried on a stable rubber off the ground, and failing this it may be offered by hand. With weak animals care should be taken to place the feeds within easy reach so that feeding entails no exertion, and several varieties of food may be left with the patient during the night, as it will often feed when everything is quiet. Food or drink should never be forced on a horse.

In most diseases accompanied by a rise of temperature there is a disposition to constipation for which invalid foods of a laxative nature are required to loosen the bowels and promote the excretion of waste material as well as keep up the animal's strength. The various grasses, lucerne, green clover, wheat, oats, barley, maize while green, carrots, mangold, swedes, bran mash, linseed and bran mash, gruel, boiled barley or oats, linseed tea, hay tea, apples, and malted sugar afford a sufficient variety from which a suitable selection may be made according to availability and the period of the year.

All green food, if cut in a wet state, should be dried before being given. Barley and oats should be cooked slowly in a minimum of water, containing a teaspoon of salt to the gallon, and it should be comparatively dry when taken off the fire.

Gruel. This is best made by putting one gallon of water, with a teaspoonful of salt, in a pan and adding one pound of oatmeal. Stir continuously until it boils, after which it should be permitted to simmer over a gentle fire until it is of uniform thickness.

Bran Mash. To make a bran mash, first swill

out the bucket with hot water; mix an ounce of salt with three pounds of bran and pour on three parts of boiling water, stir well, cover over and allow it to stand for twenty minutes. This makes a thick mash, but cold water may be added when a sloppy mash is indicated. It should be remembered that bran retains heat and although the top may be cool, the lower part will be uppermost when turned out, and this may be too hot or even scald the lips and tongue if not stirred with the hand in the manger before allowing the horse to feed. For a bran and linseed mash allow one pound of linseed to boil slowly for two or three hours until about half a gallon of thick fluid is left to which should be added 2 lbs. of bran and 1 oz. of salt. The whole should be stirred up, covered over and allowed to steam as directed for a bran mash.

Linseed tea is made by mixing half a pound of linseed with one gallon of water and allowing it to boil gently all day. The same result may be obtained by simply soaking the linseed in cold water for twenty-four hours. The fluid may be used for pouring over any grain foods prescribed for the sick.

Hay tea is made by filling a clean bucket with good hay and filling it up with boiling water; cover up and allow to stand till cold, when the water may be strained off and given to the horse.

There are various other articles which may be given for supplying nourishment in a concentrated form, the chief of which are eggs, milk, bread, biscuits, beer, and wine. Eggs may be boiled hard, chopped up and mixed with other food, or given raw as a drench or mixed with milk (six to half a gallon)—after acquiring the taste many horses will take them freely. Most horses take readily to

bread or biscuits, which afford nourishment and often tempt a sick horse to begin feeding, since it is a change from wet food, of which animals are apt to tire. Beer, stout, and wines are given chiefly to stimulate the appetite. A quart of beer or stout and half a bottle of wine are the usual amounts given.

Bed Sores. Animals which are very weak from illness or severe lameness may lie down for days at a time and will require considerable attention to prevent the occurrence of bed sores. These are of the nature of pressure galls on the prominent parts of the shoulder, elbow, hip, and stifle. To prevent them the animal should be turned over three times daily and the parts massaged, and the bedding should be levelled and kept thick and soft. Salt and water (1 oz. to a pint), or methylated spirit and water (1 oz. to 3 ozs.) may be applied to harden the skin.

Exercise. After severe illness there is a danger of a relapse if exercise is overdone. The instructions of the veterinary surgeon in this respect should be carefully observed. The usual procedure is to begin by taking the horse out of the box at the most suitable time of the day and walking him slowly round the stable-yard. The amount of exercise is slowly increased and when possible the animal is led into a field to nibble at grass and take an interest in his surroundings. Later on the exercise may be gradually extended to half an hour morning and evening. In all cases the effect of exercise on the appetite and general appearance of the animal should be the guide in regulating the amount of increase.

In cases of lameness and injury, it is usual to fire and blister after the acute symptoms have subsided and give absolute rest for one or two months.

This system has the disadvantage of causing a wastage and loss of tone in the muscles, which take a long time to recuperate. Further, the articular cartilages of the joints of animals which remain standing for any length of time become partially absorbed and predispose an animal to joint trouble on resumption of work. To avoid these untoward changes and ensure an early resumption of work, it is a better plan to begin with a moderate amount of exercise at a walk as soon as the animal is free from lameness at this pace. Later on moderate trotting and cantering may be given until muscles, tendons, and joints are able to stand more strenuous work. After three to six months of such treatment horses with severe strains have a much better chance of remaining sound than those which have recovered under a regime of absolute rest.

Bandages are used extensively for horses at work as well as rest. To secure the best results from their use and to avoid injurious results from their misapplication a few simple general directions for putting them on should be observed.

1. Don't draw any one portion of the bandage tighter than another.

2. Don't tie the strings tighter than the bandage, or a painful swelling on the skin will result.

3. Always fasten the strings on the outside of the leg.

4. In bandaging uneven surfaces, such as the knee and hock, or on swollen surfaces, put loose wool under the bandage and don't draw it too tight.

Warm Bandages. Bandages intended for warmth are made of flannel. If put on too tightly, interference with the circulation or injury to the skin may result ; the small white patches of hair seen on horses' legs are often the points indicating uneven pressure from bandaging. Bandages are

Plate 23

THE APPLICATION OF DRY HEAT TO A STRANGLES ABSCESS. (*See page* 121.)

Plates 24, 25 & 26

PUTTING ON A BANDAGE (Sometimes)

usually 8 to 9 ft. long and $4\frac{1}{2}$ ins. wide, and for immediate use they should be rolled up evenly with the tapes inside. Before putting on a bandage, unroll 6 ins. of it and lay the loose portion across the outside of the leg close to the knee or hock with the end reaching to the centre of the joint and the rolled part turned to the outside and directed downwards and forwards. Keep the bandage close to the leg and allow it to unroll itself round and down the limb until the upper part of the pastern is reached. In the upward direction continue up to close below the knee when the loose end should be turned down and the folds of the bandage carried over it. Tie the tapes a little above the centre of the cannon-bone and tuck in the ends neatly. By this method no twists need be taken on the bandage which will lie close to the leg. The bandages should be taken off two or three times daily and the legs hand-rubbed to restore warmth.

Exercising bandages are used for support and protection from injury when at work, and for this purpose stockinette is better than flannel. With this form of bandage there is a risk of the inner end of the bandage working free; to prevent this, commence as directed in the preceding paragraph but let the end of the bandage extend 3 ins. above the knee so as to allow a longer free end to be turned down and firmly secured by the bandage being rolled over it. The lower part of the bandage should extend down to a point just clear of the fetlock joint, and in rolling it upwards the free overlapping inner end will be secured in the manner previously described. More equal pressure and better support for the tendons and ligaments are obtained by placing a layer of cotton-wool in the grooves between the tendon and bone on each side of the leg.

Pressure bandages are used for the treatment of sprains and for the removal of exudations and synovial enlargements which may accompany or result from them.

Materials required : two pieces of cotton wadding, 2 yds. long and 10 ins. wide, and two calico bandages, 6 yds. long and 3 ins. wide. Failing cotton wadding ordinary cotton-wool is a good substitute. Wrap the wadding or wool layer by layer evenly round the leg and put on the first calico bandage just tight enough to hold the material in its place. Afterwards put on the second calico bandage tightly so as to distribute the pressure firmly and evenly on the leg and secure it by tapes or a safety-pin. In a sprained ligament there are displacement and rupture of the fibres of the tendon or ligament with the deposition of fluid between the fibres as a result of the inflammation. The object of the pressure is to remove the fluid before it has become organised and to unite the injured fibres early and so restore the tendon to its normal size as near as possible. When this form of bandage is used in the first stages of a sprain, it should be left on for 48 hours, then removed and the leg bent and extended a few times. Hand-rub the injured parts lightly with the foot lifted off the ground and then apply the bandage again, taking care to remove the hard or caked pieces of wadding. The bandage should afterwards be removed morning and evening, and the lower part of the leg extended and flexed for 10 to 15 minutes with alternate hand-rubbing, as just described, but with gradually increasing strength.

Sweating bandages are sometimes used for reducing enlargements on limbs and consist of a wet linen bandage covered with oilskin.

Fomenting bandages are used for the relief of acute

pain and for any injury where heat and moisture are required. Soak a flannel bandage in hot water, wring it out, put it on very quickly and cover with a dry bandage. This should be removed three times daily and should not be used for more than two or three days at a time as such bandages are apt to cause injury to the skin. A much better plan for applying heat and moisture to the skin is to use antiphlogistine or similar preparations which retain the heat much longer and give greater relief with little danger of injury to the skin.

Fomentations. The water should be as hot as the hand can comfortably bear and the temperature must be kept at this point by the frequent addition of hot water. Let the water be near the patient, soak a piece of clean blanket or cloth in it, wring out till nearly dry, apply to the part and put a thick dry wrapping over it to keep the heat in. Renew the fomentations every twenty minutes. When it is not advisable to touch the affected parts, soak a sponge or clean swab in the water and apply higher up so as to allow the water to trickle down over the injured surface. The foot or any part of the leg below the knee is most conveniently fomented by putting it into a deep bucket of hot water; in large studs it is advisable to have a bucket half as deep again as usual for this special purpose. When large surfaces such as the chest or abdomen require to be fomented, woollen blankets are used. The blanket should be folded to the size of the part requiring fomentation and covered with a thick rug. In most cases three or four fomentations in the course of twenty-four hours are sufficient. It is not advisable to continue fomentations for too long a period as they cause the skin to lose its tone and become sodden.

Poultices. Warm poultices are used for the relief

of pain or for softening the horn in inflammation of the feet. They are usually made of bran or linseed meal which should be kept moderately wet and not allowed to dry on the place to which they are applied. A cloth filled with tow and kept wet and warm is much cleaner and will answer the purpose when it can be applied. But poultices are not very satisfactory for animals owing to the difficulty of securing them, and antiphlogistine, to which reference has already been made, is far superior than anything else for any part of the limbs except the feet.

Cold Applications. Cold-water applications to the legs are often beneficial for giving tone and bracing up the structures. For this purpose a jet may be attached to a rubber hose connected with the tap, or, failing this, an ordinary watering-pot with a rose will answer, or the horse may be allowed to stand in a running stream. A special rubber appliance made of india-rubber can be obtained from most surgical instrument makers for the irrigation of legs. Cold bandages are usually made of linen and should be kept constantly wet and applied with moderate pressure. A bucketful of clay, to which two handfuls of ordinary salt have been added, is a simple and most useful remedy in a stable, and a wet cloth over the clay will prevent evaporation and keep the clay soft. It is an excellent application for bruised feet, for kicks, and injuries to limbs unaccompanied by wounds, and for sprains where cold and even pressure are indicated. The clay should be plastered half an inch thick on the legs or joints and covered with a cold-water bandage which should be kept wet. For contracted or congested feet, standing a horse in a clay bed in the front of the stall is an old-fashioned remedy which often gives excellent results.

Drenching. Special bottles are now sold for this purpose, but a horn or soda-water bottle answers very well. Place the loop of a twitch in the mouth so that the cord rests on the palate between the molar and incisor teeth ; get an assistant to stand on the near side and raise the head so that the line of the lower jaw is inclined slightly upwards just above the horizontal position. The person giving the drench should stand on the off side and introduce the neck of the bottle into the mouth just in front of the molar teeth and direct it backwards. One or two wine glasses full at a time should be given and the horse allowed to swallow the fluid. Before lowering the head make sure that the horse has made sufficient swallows, as some animals are inclined to retain a good deal of fluid in the mouth. During the process the tongue should on no account be drawn out of the mouth or the nostrils grasped by the hand. If the horse coughs, lower the head immediately to prevent any of the fluid going the wrong way. A practice existed some years ago of giving drenches through the nose, but this has been given up owing to the danger of the fluid getting into the wind tube and causing lung trouble. Drenching horses is not so satisfactory as other means of giving medicines owing to an uncertain proportion of the medicine being spilt or lost in the administration.

Balling. To the uninitiated the administration of a ball is somewhat difficult especially when the mouth is comparatively small, but with a little care and practice it becomes quite a simple operation. Turn the horse round in the stall with the halter and head-rope on, to prevent him backing away from you, and get an assistant to stand on the near side and hold the head. Put an old kid glove, with the fingers cut off, on the right hand for protection,

and place the ball between the first three fingers, bringing them together so as to make the hand as small as possible. Take hold of the horse's tongue with the left hand and pull it gently out to the right side of the mouth. From the same side introduce the right hand and place the first two fingers in the centre of the roof of the mouth between the upper teeth. Now push the hand quietly back pressing gently on the roof of the mouth, till a space is felt at the root of the tongue, when the ball is released and the hand withdrawn. Let go of the tongue and stand on the near side of the neck and wait till the ball is seen passing down the gullet. If there is any delay in swallowing, a mouthful of water or a handful of food will have the desired effect. To those who do not care to risk their hands in the mouth and for dealing with fractious animals, a balling-gun may be used, several varieties of which are on the market. The ball is put in the open end and, when the instrument has been pushed in the required length, the stilette is made to eject the ball.

Enemas are generally used to soften and loosen hardened fæces for the relief of constipation and are introduced into the rectum by means of special funnels or pumps, the nozzle being oiled or greased to facilitate entrance. Two quarts of luke-warm water are sufficient for one injection, and retention for a few minutes should be ensured by keeping the tail down. Nutritive enemas consisting of gruel are beneficial when the patient is unable to take food by the mouth, and for this purpose should not exceed one quart in quantity. Enemas are also used for destroying worms in the rectum, a condition indicated by the horse rubbing the root of the tail and a greyish mucous deposit on the outside of the anus. A handful of salt in a quart of

water given on three successive days is recommended for this purpose.

Instructions of Grooms in Nursing. Kindness, sympathy, patience, and ability to observe are essentials in men selected for nursing sick animals. It is necessary for them to be familiar with the appearance and habits of the horse in health so as to be able to detect any divergencies from the normal. The general healthy characteristics are: feet firm on the ground; head on the alert; eyes bright and ears moving to and fro. The coat shining, loose, and supple; pulse about 40; breathing 15 to the minute, the temperature 100° F., and the colour and lining membrane of the eye and nostril pink. The bowels move on an average eight times daily and the droppings are just soft enough to break on falling to the ground. Their colour varies from dark yellow to green, according to the nature of the food, and they should not be coated with slime. The urine is passed several times daily in quantities of a quart or more. It is light yellow in colour and rather thick in appearance. Grass lightens the colour and consistency, and clover hay has the reverse effect. Horses and mares in urinating often grunt and stand in awkward positions which should not be mistaken for pain.

In nursing the sick the following points should be noted. In all febrile diseases: the temperature two or three times daily, the moisture of the mouth, the colour of the eye membrane, the warmth or otherwise of the legs and body, and the appetite.

In catarrhal affections: the discharge from the nostrils, the cough, swelling of the throat, and ability to masticate and swallow food.

In chest diseases: the breathing by observing the movement of the flanks and nostrils, discharge

from the nostrils, the appearance of the bedding and rug on entering the box to see if there is indication of the patient having laid down, and any difference in the breathing when in the recumbent position.

In colic or abdominal trouble : pawing, looking round at the flanks, sweating, kicking the abdomen, distention of the body, urination and passing of dung.

In lameness : pointing or resting of the limb, and feeling for heat or swelling in the suspected part.

CHAPTER VIII

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION, AND TREATMENT (*continued*)

FEVER. The symptoms of fever are a high temperature, rapid pulse and breathing, dullness, loss of appetite, and slight constipation. In addition the coat may stare and there may be a certain amount of shivering. Fever is not a disease of itself, and is generally one of the symptoms of some contagious or other disease such as influenza, strangles, catarrh, pneumonia, etc. Young horses when taken up from grass or after a train journey are particularly liable to it, more especially when they are put into crowded and insanitary stables.

Treatment. Remove to a well-ventilated, quiet box and give careful attention to the animal's comfort and state of the bowels. If there are acute depression and loss of appetite in the first stage, give a drench composed of spirits of ether, 1 oz., and water, 1 pint. Two hours afterwards give a bran mash to which 4 ozs. Epsom-salts may be added, and afterwards feed on half oats and half good coarse bran, which may be given scalded with advantage. Green food when available may be given freely, and water should always be kept by the animal and changed frequently. When the attack has subsided, regulate the variety and quantity of the food according to the exercise the

animal can take. When fever does not yield to treatment within twenty-four hours it is advisable to call in a veterinary surgeon, as it may be the premonitory sign of some serious or contagious disease.

Coughs and Colds. Coughing is a symptom of several diseases and has to be considered in connection with other symptoms in order to locate the seat of the trouble. It may be hard, soft, dry, moist, or hollow in character. When associated with discharge from the eyes and nose it will probably be due to cold, although these symptoms often appear at a later stage. When a cough is noticed, it is always advisable to ease an animal in its work in case more serious symptoms develop. The general appearance, the appetite, and temperature should be carefully noted. If the latter is above normal, particularly in young animals, it may be the first stage of influenza. A dry cough, with no other visible symptoms, may be due to indigestion. What is best described as an " apology for a cough " is indicative of broken wind.

Catarrh or common cold is caused by sudden changes of temperature and exposure to draughts, when horses are heated or in stables, and young horses, when first brought into stables, are very susceptible. Catarrh may be ushered in by sneezing and coughing. At first there is a dryness of the membranes of the eye and nose which is soon followed by a watery discharge. In a few days this becomes greyish and thicker and alters to a yellow colour, when it then runs freely from the nostrils but does not smell. The cough varies according to the state of the throat. In the first stage it is short and may be painful, but later, when there is much phlegm, it is hoarse and longer, and may be associated with difficulty in swallowing food.

Catarrh, usually, runs its course in about a fortnight and may leave a state of general weakness and loss of condition.

Treatment. General attention to comfort with plenty of fresh air. Steam the head and clear out the nostrils with warm water, afterwards smearing them with a little vaseline to prevent the discharge from sticking. If the cough is very painful, rub the throat with liniment, and give only such food as can be easily swallowed. Feeding off the ground helps to get rid of the discharge in the nostrils. If the bowels are constipated give 2 to 4 ozs. of Epsom-salts daily till relieved. There are no specific drugs for colds. One should aim at steering the disease through its course under the most favourable conditions possible, and should be in no great hurry to put the animal to work till quite recovered.

Strangles is an infective febrile disease of horses, the prominent feature of which is an abscess which develops between the branches of the lower jaw. Although there is no age at which horses are altogether immune, it is generally a disease of young animals which usually suffer from a severe type, whereas in the older ones it assumes a milder form. In the mildest form of strangles there is no abscess formation under the jaw, and the disease is thus hardly distinguishable from a severe cold. It is advisable, therefore, to treat such colds with the same precautions as strangles to avoid the risk of spreading the infection to others. In simple strangles there may be only the one abscess, and in severe infection there will be more which may develop in any part of the body. Under favourable conditions the abscess comes to a head in about a week, when it bursts and then heals rapidly. Uncomplicated strangles runs its course

in two to three weeks, and the general treatment is much the same as that for a severe cold. The most simple method of dealing with the throat swelling is to pack the sides of the throat and space between the branches of the jaw with dry tow or wool, retained in position by a piece of blanket secured with broad tape behind and in front of the ears and face. Examine the swelling and adjust the packing daily and when the abscess bursts remove it and keep the wounds clean.

Influenza is a contagious fever which attacks horses and mules. It is due to the presence of an ultra-visible microbe in the blood and can be produced artificially by blood inoculation from diseased to healthy animals. It occurs at all seasons of the year but is most serious during the winter months when bronchial and lung complications are frequent. The disease runs a mild course during the summer and autumn, which is attributable to heat and sunlight and the abundance of suitable foods.

Mortality is always higher when the sanitary surroundings are not good and the mildness of the disease in recent years compared with that of thirty years ago is mainly attributable to the improvements in the building of stables. When large numbers of animals are suddenly brought together the risk of infection and danger of complications necessitate special precautions being taken. The period of incubation is two to three days, and if animals are worked or sent train journeys during this stage a more serious form of the disease, often fatal lung complications, will develop. During the early part of the Great War the mortality from this disease was extremely high but, later on, when the temperature of all horses and mules was taken prior to journeys by rail or sea and before issue from

Remount Depots, there was a marked decrease in both incidence and mortality.

Symptoms. Fever, lassitude, depression, loss of appetite, cough, swelling of the eyes and limbs, discharge from the eyes and nose resembling those described under catarrh. In mild cases, only one of these symptoms may be noticeable, but in severe cases most of them will be present. The acute stage runs its course in four or five days, and when there are no complications recovery is generally complete in ten days.

Treatment. Isolation, rest, good nursing, warmth, light, fresh air, and laxative food are of the greatest importance. During and after the attack weakness and wasting of the muscles in varying degrees are apparent, and if these are not taken into consideration in regulating the feeding and exercise after recovery, prolonged loss of condition, lameness, or other complications will result. During an outbreak the healthy horses of a stud should be carefully watched and internal temperatures taken to prevent exercise or work in the incubative stage of the disease and to ensure early and satisfactory recovery.

Lampas is a term applied to a swollen condition of the gums behind the incisor teeth of the upper jaw of the horse. It is seen in young animals when changing their teeth and in older ones when suffering from indigestion. Green food for a few days or two bran mashes each containing 4 ozs. of Epsom-salts is all that is necessary. When due to teething, remove any food which has worked up between the teeth.

Quidding and Slobbering, or the dropping of half-masticated food and the discharge of saliva from the mouth. The food may be dropped without salivation or the reverse may be noted. Both

conditions may be caused by abrasions of the membranes of the mouth or tongue, soreness of the throat, or disease of the teeth, and should be regarded as symptoms of something to be sought and remedied.

Rasping the Teeth. As the age of a horse increases the molar teeth sometimes wear in an uneven manner and result in irregular edges on their surface. When the front part of first molars is sharp or rough the corners of the mouth may become pinched from the pressure of the bit against them, and in such cases the oats are imperfectly masticated and passed whole with the fæces. Periodical rasping by skilful operator is all that is required.

Colic is the name given to the various symptoms which animals show when suffering from abdominal pain. The causes are numerous but the majority are connected with watering, feeding, and work. Improper food, excessive quantities, sudden changes, unsuitably prepared food, working severely after watering or feeding, are all causes of indigestion and colicky pains.

Symptoms. Dullness, uneasiness, pawing with a forefoot, arching the back, looking round at the flank, kicking the belly, walking round the box, lying down and getting up and rolling, sweating in patches, or, in very severe cases, all over, hurried and distressed breathing, many or all of these symptoms may be observed in the course of a quarter of an hour, after which there will be a cessation of pain till another spasm appears. As the attack progresses the pain becomes more frequent and the intervals of relief shorter. This train of symptoms indicates what is known as spasmodic colic. When abdominal pain is associated with the fermentation of food in the stomach

or bowels, it is termed flatulent colic. In this form the belly becomes inflated with gas giving an unnaturally rotund appearance, and the pain is generally continuous and not so violent as in the spasmodic variety. In both varieties there is generally constipation of the bowels.

Treatment should be directed to the relief of the pain and stimulation of the bowels. For the former, ginger (a dessertspoonful), brandy, or any spirit, 4 ozs., is generally available, and should be given in a pint of water. When this does not have the desired effect, cut up and dissolve a 4-drachm physic ball in 1½ pts. of warm water and give as a drench. For the flatulent variety, turpentine, 1 to 2 ozs. mixed with 1 pt. of linseed oil or beaten up with eggs and milk, is the best remedy for checking the formation of gas and stimulating the movements of the bowels. The horse should be kept quiet in a stall, or better still in a large loose box, with plenty of bedding under him to prevent injuries when rolling. A groom should be in constant attendance to see that the animal does not lie down in a position from which he is unable to rise. One or two enemas of warm water should be given, and in severe pain foment the abdomen. In all cases food and water should be withheld for six hours after the last spasm, and during the attack a muzzle should be put on to prevent the horse eating the bedding. If there is no satisfactory progress after three hours no time should be lost in calling in professional aid.

Prevention. As colic is usually brought on by injudicious watering and feeding when the horse is exhausted by hard work or long fasting, it can often be avoided by regulating the amount given on those occasions. On return from hunting a bucketful of oatmeal gruel is palatable and refresh-

ing and will restore the necessary tone to the digestive organs ; failing this, tepid water followed by half a feed of scalded oats and bran, two hours before the ordinary water and food are given will, as a rule, prevent abdominal trouble.

Constipation. When not a symptom associated with a febrile or other disease, this is generally caused by feeding horses on food which contains an excess of indigestible matter or by improper methods of feeding and watering, and it is a contributory factor to indigestion. Change of food, cooked or wet feeds, and green fodder will overcome it and if these prove insufficient small doses of Epsom-salts may be given.

Diarrhœa. Slack-loined, " body ribbed up," and nervous horses purge when worked or excited, and are often liable to diarrhœa from trifling changes of food or temperature. It may be brought on by sudden change of food, improper food or worms. Dry food will sometimes stop it and in all cases strict attention to the feeding is the most effectual treatment. When due to worms, it is relieved by a drench consisting of turpentine 1½ ozs., linseed oil 1½ pts.

Bots and Worms. Bots are the larvæ of the gadfly. During the summer and autumn the eggs are deposited on the hairs of the forelegs and body where they develop into larvæ which produce a slight itching and induce the animal to lick or gnaw the part, whereby they get on the tongue and pass into the stomach with the food or water. They attach themselves by two strong mouth-hooks and remain in this position till the early summer when they detach themselves and are voided in the dung. After a few weeks they become mature and repeat the cycle of their existence. In small numbers they do not appear to do any harm but in

large numbers may give rise to abdominal pain, loss of appetite, and debility. The eggs appear as small grey specks on the ends of the hairs and are easily removed with a singeing-lamp or with the blade of a safety-razor.

Treatment. Ordinary worm medicines have no effect on bots. The best period to commence treatment is after the disappearance of the fly. Food should be withheld for twenty-four hours, and then 6 drachms of carbon bisulphide should be given in a capsule or by means of the stomach tube. With this treatment bots, as well as round worms, are voided for a period of 17 days afterwards.

Worms in the bowels are very common in horses, and the following are the chief varieties :

1. The round white worm (*Ascaris megalocephala*).
2. The thread or maw worm (*Oxyuris curvula*).
3. The red or palisade worm (*Sclerastoma vulgaris* and *armatus*).

1. *The round white worm* resembles an earth worm in shape and varies in length from 6 to 14 inches. Natural infection occurs through the ingestion of food or water contaminated with the eggs. The eggs are voided with the dung and collect in the bedding or on pastures from which they are taken up by animals. Foals usually get infected by swallowing eggs which have adhered to the udder of the mare. They are often present in animals without giving any apparent trouble, but when in excessive numbers they may cause colic, unthriftiness, or debility. Treatment : Starve the animal for 24 hours and drench with 2 ozs. of turpentine and a quart of linseed oil. The treatment recommended for bots has been found to be 100 per cent efficient for this kind of worm.

2. *The Thread or Maw Worm.* The mature

worm is about an inch and three-quarters in length. Its tail end is thin and whip-like and the front end thick. The female deposits its eggs on the anus of the animal, where they adhere as a light yellow waxy mass. They produce irritation and cause animals to rub their tails and quarters on hard objects. The anus should be cleansed daily with a damp cloth and an enema given consisting of salt and water in the proportion of 1 oz. of salt to 1 quart of warm water. Subsequently the turpentine and oil treatment recommended for round worms should be given.

The red or palisade worm is a very common parasite and is by far the most dangerous of those which infest horses. As the worm is seldom seen in the fæces its presence in the animal usually remains unsuspected. The worms inhabit the large intestines; they vary in length from $\frac{3}{4}$ inch to 2 inches, the female being larger than the male. They are grey or brownish red in colour. There are several species of the worm, but the most common are those which attach themselves to and form small cysts in the mucous membrane of the intestines. Another species penetrates the blood-vessels and forms aneurisms. The females produce eggs which are expelled with the dung. Natural infection occurs from grazing on infected pastures or feeding with hay grown on infected land.

Symptoms. The presence of palisade worms in the arteries causes intermittent colic and when the walls of the aneurism rupture there is fatal internal bleeding. Fortunately this form of infection is not very common. The other species, some of which feed on the blood of the mucous membrane of the intestine and others on the intestinal contents, is found more or less frequently all over the world. It used to be thought peculiar to marshy land,

THE FOOT SURFACE OF A SHOE FOR STUMBLING. (*Page* 205.)

THE SHOE AFTER BEING NAILED ON. (*Page* 205.)

Plates 27 & 28

AN EXERCISING BANDAGE. (*Page* 111.)

Plates 29 & 30

METHOD OF APPLYING A DRESSING TO AN OVER-REACH. (*Page* 146.)

but any land which is used for grazing horses from year to year will become badly infected.

A large percentage of horses harbour red worms without any apparent harm, but when health is impaired from other causes, or when the worms become numerous in the bowels, definite symptoms of parasitic infection will be observed. Yearlings are more liable to be affected than adults in which the symptoms are considerably less severe. The symptoms are staring coat, tightness of the skin, loss of condition and, in advanced infection, emaciation, diarrhœa, and dropsical swellings on the lower surface of the body and limbs. A definite diagnosis can be made from a microscopical examination of the dung which will reveal the presence of the eggs of the parasite.

Prevention. Land which is used for grazing should be grazed from year to year alternately with horses and cattle. When this cannot be done, and the value of the stock makes it worth while, the danger of infection may be much reduced by having the horse-dung collected and removed daily. Periodical worm expulsion in the autumn and spring is an essential part of prevention, and in thoroughbreds, hunters, and polo ponies it ensures freedom from the evil effects of parasitism at the time when it is essential for them to be in good condition.

Treatment. The administration of ordinary worm medicines for these parasites is not very successful. Turpentine and oil of chenopodium in linseed oil after 24 to 36 hours' fasting has given good results, but the most success has been obtained when these have been combined with other vermifuges and administered to the animal with the stomach-pump.

CHAPTER IX

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION, AND TREATMENT (*continued*)

WOUNDS may, for the purpose of description, be divided into four classes, namely: (1) clean cut; (2) torn; (3) bruised; (4) punctured.

1. *Clean-cut wounds*, as a rule, bleed freely owing to the blood-vessels being sharply divided without tearing or stretching. When the bleeding has stopped, the cut surfaces, after being brought together by mechanical means, heal with comparative quickness.

2. *Torn wounds* are generally caused by hooks or nails and do not bleed so freely as clean-cut ones. In the process of tearing, the skin or flesh is injured, which makes reunion more difficult and prolonged.

3. *Bruised wounds* are by far the most common in horses and may be caused by falls, kicks, blows, or undue pressure. Under this heading are included broken knees, overreaches, treads, saddle and collar galls. Bruised wounds bleed only slightly but they are accompanied by swelling and a varying degree of injury to the skin which may be so severe as to cause sloughing.

4. *Punctured wounds* are fairly frequent in the feet of animals from treading on sharp stones, nails, etc.; or from thorns, stakes, prongs, forks, or nails entering the skin. Such wounds are nearly always

dangerous owing to dirt being carried into the wound through the small opening which closes early. The foreign material introduced causes inflammation and the formation of pus a few days afterwards necessitating surgical intervention. In some districts the germ of tetanus is thus introduced with fatal results.

Healing of Wounds. In surgical operations when wounds are opened under aseptic precautions and all clots of blood are removed before bringing the surfaces together, there is a direct union in a few days, but, generally speaking, accidental wounds in animals are associated with the introduction of septic organisms, causing pus formation, or injury to the skin and underlying structures. These wounds heal from the lowest part and sides by what are known as granulations which are eventually covered by the skin, causing a permanent scar over the site of the injury. Slightly bruised wounds on the surface of the skin generally heal under a scab which is formed by a slight quantity of serum which oozes from them and subsequently dries.

Treatment of Wounds. The essential principle for the successful treatment of all wounds is cleanliness. The wound itself, the hands of the attendant, the dressing and surroundings should receive careful attention in this respect.

Arrest of Bleeding. In the majority of wounds bleeding has usually ceased when they are discovered. When, however, the flow of blood is serious, it requires immediate attention. If the blood is bright red in colour and spurting out, it indicates a severed artery ; if a dull red colour and in a steady flow, a vein ; if mixed, from both. The last is the most usual form and comes from the numerous small vessels on the surface of the skin.

Bleeding may be arrested by pressure or the application of heat or cold. Pressure is one of the readiest means and may be carried out by light bandaging above and below the wound, or by placing a pad of wool or tow on the wound and bandaging over it. For severe bleeding from a limb, a tourniquet should be applied above the wound. This may be improvised by tying a soft thick cord or a large pocket-handkerchief loosely round the leg above the wound and twisting a stick in it till it is tight enough to stop the bleeding. This form of pressure should be removed as soon as possible since it cannot be borne long without causing the leg to swell, and, if prolonged, may be followed by gangrene. When the cut end of a blood-vessel can be seen, it should be tied with a piece of clean thread which has been soaked in an antiseptic. The application of heat or cold through the medium of water checks bleeding by causing contraction of the coats of the vessels. The temperature of hot water for this purpose should be 120° to 125° F.; when cold is used, the addition of ice increases its styptic effect. Bleeding stops because the blood clots in the cut ends of the vessels, and when this has happened, all outside clots, dirt, and foreign material should be cleared away by washing the wound with any of the following: —

Carbolic Acid Lysol Jeyes Fluid	A teaspoonful to half a pint of water.

The hair on the skin should be clipped closely off for half an inch from the cut edge, and the wound covered with a piece of boric lint or antiseptic wool, retained in position by a suitable bandage. When a wound is healthy with no discharge, very little

washing with water is required. A suppurating wound will require washing or irrigating once or twice daily, and for this purpose a teaspoonful of salt to a pint of boiled water, which has been allowed to cool, gives excellent results. For slight superficial wounds the best dressing is tincture of iodine applied as soon as possible after their infliction. Wounds near joints should be touched with the hands as little as possible and should not be fomented as there is great risk in causing an open joint, which is recognised by the presence of a clear, oily fluid.

Punctured wounds are the most dangerous variety. A stable prong, a rusty nail, or any sharp-pointed article is apt to introduce septic material which becomes imprisoned and sets up a dangerous inflammatory swelling. It is generally advisable to call in skilled advice for this form of injury. When there is any delay in obtaining this, fomentations or an antiphlogistine dressing should be applied.

Scalds and Burns are not very common. In slight cases blisters form on the skin and when they burst a raw and painful surface is exposed, which should be protected from the atmosphere and from contact with bedding and dirt. The injured parts should be dressed with a mixture of equal parts of lime-water and olive or linseed oil, and covered with a layer of wool or lint. When a bandage is required to keep the wool in position, it must be light and adjusted with great care. The after-treatment does not differ from that of a wound.

Stings from bees or wasps are only of importance when they interfere with the fitting of the bridle or saddle. For the former a solution of household ammonia and for the latter ordinary vinegar or

lemon-juice will relieve the pain and prevent undue swelling.

Skin Diseases. The skin is composed of two layers; a superficial unsensitive layer, the outer scales of which are constantly being cast off in the form of dandruff, and a deep sensitive layer which contains blood-vessels, nerves, sweat glands, oil glands, and hair bulbs. Through the outer layer the hairs and the ducts of the oil and sweat glands pass to gain the surface, where the openings are known as the pores. The coat is shed twice yearly, in the spring when it is short and fine, and autumn when it is long and thick. The skin generally is very elastic and when handled should feel loose and freely movable over the structures beneath, while the coat should lie flat, feel smooth, and carry a nice gloss. Want of condition, cold or ill-health may cause it to stare, look dull, or become light over the body, a condition commonly known as "hidebound."

The details of good grooming do not come into the scope of this subject, for the purpose of which it will be sufficient to state its object, viz.: cleanliness, improvement in condition and appearance, and the prevention of disease. Although contagious skin diseases are not produced by dirt and want of grooming, they are most frequently met with and spread with greater rapidity and are more difficult to eradicate when dirty conditions prevail.

The most common symptom of skin trouble is itching which may be caused by mange, lice, poultry or forage mites. As mange has to be notified to the police under the Contagious Diseases (Animals) Act, it is a wise precaution to call in a veterinary surgeon to diagnose any form of eruption of the skin associated with itchiness.

Lice can readily be detected by looking carefully

into the coat and roots of the mane and tail. Infected animals require clipping and washing all over with a solution of Jeyes Fluid and water, and the stable should be thoroughly cleansed and sprayed with the same fluid.

Ringworm, although contagious, is not very serious and is recognised by the presence of small round or oval areas of raised hair which subsequently fall off, leaving bald patches covered with greyish scales. It is frequently seen in young horses, especially in the autumn, when they are brought up from grass and put in stables.

Treatment. Rub soft soap into the skin for one inch around the patch and then over the infected area for a few minutes. Leave for 24 hours and wash off with warm water, and, when dry, paint with tincture of iodine.

Surfeit (Humour or Nettlerash) is a term applied to an eruption of small irregular lumps on the body or neck. The usual cause of surfeit is unsuitable food and is readily cured by a dose of physic and a change of diet.

Cracked heels are associated with an inflamed condition of the skin at the back of the pastern joint, caused by not thoroughly drying the legs after washing them.

Treatment. Cleanse and dry the skin daily, dress with boric acid, and poultice with dry bran.

Mud fever, an ailment similar to cracked heels, is a superficial inflammation of the skin of the legs which sometimes extends to the under surface of the belly. The surface is hot and tender and the limbs become swollen. An eruption of vesicles occurs in patches in the legs and along the surface of the abdomen ; after a time the hair falls off and the cuticle of the skin may peel off to a considerable extent. It is generally supposed to be caused by

the irritating effect of particular kinds of soil or clay in certain districts where it is the custom to wash the legs after work. In such cases they have not been thoroughly dried and the skin has been exposed to a cold floor draught in the stable. The practice of using the clipping-machine on the legs is a predisposing cause of mud fever and cracked heels. When the leg hairs become long and untidy, trimming with a comb and scissors is sufficient and if, after work, the horse comes in with wet and muddy legs, it is better to allow them to dry of their own accord.

Treatment. Thoroughly cleanse and dry the skin and apply boric powder or boric vaseline daily, give exercise to keep the skin supple and the legs from filling. An aperient (Epsom-salts, 4 ozs.) may be given and the diet should be laxative in character with green food and carrots.

Injuries to the Eyes. These are usually due to blows or the lodgment of small objects on the front of the eyeball. The eyelids are closed and swollen, tears flow copiously, the lining membrane of the eye is inflamed, and afterwards the front of the eye turns milky white. In animals, nature provides for the removal of most small foreign bodies which gain entrance to the eye by the provision of a powerful retractor muscle and a hair or third eyelid which sweeps the front when the retractor acts. When there is no mark or history of a blow on the eye, examine the surface of the eyeball for insects, husks, chaff, or pieces of grit and, when discovered, remove them by wiping it firmly with a piece of fine linen wound over the finger. Foment the eye with warm water and apply boric acid lotion. Keep a cloth over the eye to prevent light entering and smear a little vaseline below the eye to prevent the tears making the skin sore.

Injuries to the mouth are generally inflicted by the bit, the chief seat of injury being the bars and the corners of the mouth. A twisted snaffle saws through the mouth of a pulling horse and often bruises and lacerates the bars. The action of a severe curb-bit may injure the bone of the lower jaw and an improperly fitted chain may wound the chin grove and lips. Wounds of the mouth recover rapidly if kept clean after feeding. The advisability of avoiding the cause which gives rise to the injury is obvious.

Saddle Galls. Every injury to the back, shoulders, withers, or other part of the body due to saddles is brought about by two means, or a combination of the two, viz., friction and pressure. Friction rubs off the hair and outer surface of the skin, and pressure, partly or entirely, cuts off the blood supply. When the skin is unaccustomed to pressure it is liable to be bruised by even moderate work. Horses when first broken to riding require examining for galls daily until the resistance to friction and pressure is established. Even after the back is well inured to contact with the saddle it may become inflamed by long-continued or uneven pressure.

Bearing Surface of the Back. The muscles covering the upper part of the ribs from the play of the shoulders to the last rib are the only part of the horse's body fit to bear the weight of the saddle and rider. A saddle placed too far forward will press in the tops of the shoulder-blades, and one placed too far back interferes with the movement of the loins. The central line of the back is bone with a covering of skin over it and is incapable of supporting even a moderate amount of pressure without becoming inflamed.

Saddles are made in various sizes and in selecting

one careful attention should be paid to the above points. The panels of saddles are stuffed with flock or curled horsehair with the object of producing a soft but firm under-surface to enable the back to bear with impunity the hard line of the saddle. With wear the stuffing becomes displaced and the serge covering worn out. Every saddle gall is due to a certain definite cause which if removed produces no further effect. It is important, therefore, to be on the look-out for every rub or swelling no matter how slight. The causes of saddle galls are various and may be classified as follows :—

Causes.	*Prevention.*
1. Unsuitable conformation of the horse.	
Withers too high or too low.	Special saddle carefully fitted.
Spine too high.	
Chest too shallow.	Use a breastplate to prevent saddle from slipping back.
Ribs too round, too shallow in the flank.	
2. Skin.	
Soft condition of horse.	Regular work.
Small wounds and bruises from other than saddle causes.	Avoid riding till cured.
Nodules or humour swellings.	
Larvæ of warble flies.	
3. Bad horsemanship.	
Rolling in the saddle.	Eassie's Patent Panel Saddle.

Causes.	*Prevention.*
Rider too long in saddle.	Dismount occasionally.
Dropping lighted matches or cigarette-ends under gullet of saddle.	Obvious.
4. Saddle.	
Too large or too small.	If not satisfied on the point get expert advice.
Panels badly stuffed or worn.	Dry-heat and brush panels regularly and
Panel covering hard, dirty, or worn.	send saddle once yearly to good saddler to be overhauled.
5. Girth.	
Too tight or too slack.	Test tightness. After girthing up, draw two fingers from above downwards between girths and skin and smooth out any wrinkles. A further adjustment will be required after saddle has been on half an hour.
Dirty or hard.	Web girths require frequent brushing. Leather girths require frequent application of grease or oil to keep them soft.
6. Roller.	
Imperfectly stuffed.	Obvious.

Causes.	*Prevention.*
7. Neglect.	
Exposure of wet back to air after removal of saddle.	Dry back as soon as possible, cover with a blanket, or loosen girths and leave saddle on until back is dry.
8. Accidental.	
Falls.	Sometimes unavoidable in hunting-field.
Grit thrown back under saddle from horses in front.	

Numnahs and leather saddle-cloths are sometimes issued for the prevention of sore backs. Numnahs should not be thick or they will pinch the withers on each side under the gullet-plate. Leather saddle-cloths should be a little larger than the panel and kept soft by having fat rubbed into the rough side. Both numnahs and leather saddle-cloths require well raising up into the arch of the gullet-plate before girthing up the horse. The employment of woollen wither-pads, pieces of felt (loose or sewn into the panel) for the relief of local pressure answer well for a short ride but are ineffective for a full day's work owing to their liability to displacement.

Eassie's Patent Panel. Brigadier-General Eassie's Patent Panel is the best appliance for the prevention of saddle galls from a bad seat or when there is any difficulty in the use of the ordinary panel. It is made of the thinnest three-ply wood cut into sections to make it entirely pliable and rest immovably on the weight-bearing surface of the back. There is no chance of injury from pressure or friction as any movement of the saddle occurs on the upper surface of the panel. It can be fitted to

old saddles of any make and only requires replacing about every five years. No stuffing is required after the panel has been fitted.

Treatment of Saddle Galls. When the swelling of the skin is slight it should be hand-rubbed three times daily and dressed with a lotion made with one part of methylated spirit to three parts of water. If the cause of the injury has been in operation for a lengthy period, a circular piece of the skin may be destroyed and result in what is commonly known as a "sitfast." In other cases small swellings containing clear fluid or pus may form. It is better to call in expert advice for the treatment of injuries of this kind as they are liable to develop into a serious condition which may incapacitate the horse for a lengthy period.

CHAPTER X

AILMENTS, SYMPTOMS, PREVENTION, AND TREATMENT (*continued*)

CAPPED Elbow is a term applied to a swelling on the point of the elbow. It results from a bruise and is contracted by the horse lying on the joint with insufficient soft bedding. Many horses paw with the front feet during feeding or prior to lying down, and in doing so invariably leave a patch of hard floor on which the elbow rests in repose. Rough uneven floors are more liable than smooth ones to cause such injury, which may occasionally be done by the inner heel of the fore shoe. At first there is a rapid swelling of the skin with a quantity of fluid beneath it, and this, if it does not receive attention, becomes organised into a hard fibrous tumour. It does not, as a rule, cause lameness and the animal can be kept at work.

Treatment. Prevent further injury by attention to the floor of the stall and the bedding especially at late evening, and see that the animal has full length of the tying-up rope to enable it to lie in comfort on its side. If it is caused by the shoe, the under edge and heel should be rounded off. In the early stages of simple cases the frequent rubbing in of liniment or embrocation will generally effect a cure, but when the injury is severe and is associated

with pain and extensive swelling it is better to call in expert advice.

Broken Knees. This term applies to any wound of the knee caused by the horse falling or hitting himself. In the majority of broken knees the wound does not cut through the whole depth of the skin, but if the fall has been heavy and on rough ground the wound may expose the tendons running over the joint and even penetrate into the joint causing a serious condition known as open joint.

The causes of broken knees are :

Fatigue from soft condition, illness, excessive weight and overwork.

Long toes from neglect of regular shoeing or a badly prepared foot during shoeing.

Too heavy shoes.

Slovenly action (stumbling).

Bad conformation. A heavy forehand associated with a sluggish temperament.

Treatment. As this class of injury is generally associated with the entrance of dirt and grit into the wound and occurs in places where first-aid remedies are not available, it is better to have the animal led to some stable or building where it is possible to have the knee bathed with warm salt and water (a handful of salt to one quart of water). The horse can then be led back to its own stable and tied up to the short rack to prevent it lying down and doing further injury to the knee. If the skin is only grazed, the application of tincture of iodine will suffice, but if the wound has broken the skin, general wound treatment (see Wounds) and absolute cleanliness should be observed. Laxative food should be given in the early stages of the treatment.

Speedy cutting is a term applied to an injury on the lower and inner side of the knee and is caused by a blow from the inside toe of the opposite foot, though occasionally it occurs on the inner side of the hock joint. It may also occur in animals out of condition and over-tired. The habit is dangerous to both riding and driving horses in that they are liable to fall from the severity of the blow. There is lameness with local pain and swelling at the seat of injury, and when the blow is often repeated a permanent enlargement results.

Prevention. A special speedy cutting boot made of stout leather and lined with felt generally enables the animal to do his work without accident.

Brushing is a similar injury to the inside of the fetlock joint and is caused by the outer edge of the inner side of the shoe or the rough clenches of its nails striking the opposite leg. It may be done at the walk, trot, canter, or gallop, but most frequently occurs when the horse is moving in a circle.

Cutting is a term applied to the injury when it occurs on the inside of the coronet where the horn and hoof join.

The causes of these three defects are :

Weakness in young animals from want of condition.

Fatigue.

Defective conformation ; toes turned outwards from the fetlocks.

Faulty action. Dishing inwards. Exaggerated action in tempestuous horses.

Bad shoeing. Shoes too wide on the inside, clenches projecting or badly finished off.

Prevention. In all cases it should be ascertained which part of the foot is striking the opposite leg,

and this is best done by covering the injured part with wet pipe-clay and riding the horse round a figure-of-eight track. A white mark will be made in the exact part of the hoof or shoe, or both, requiring attention. When the injury is done by the inside of the toe, a special shoe straight from the toe to the quarter will be required, and when it is done by the inside quarter or heel, brushing-shoes should be fitted. These are deeper and narrower on the inside quarter and heel and well bevelled under the foot (" feather edged "). In some cases a three-quarter shoe answers best. The shoes will require removal every three weeks, care being taken to lower the toes and take very little off the heels. If these measures do not prevent the injury, a special leather or numnahs fetlock-boot should be worn. A Yorkshire boot, which consists of a double layer of blanket secured with a piece of tape, is often used to protect the fetlock joints of young horses until they are sufficiently strong to work without injury.

Treatment. If there is a wound, it should be treated as laid down in the section on Wounds. For painful swellings, antiphlogistine applications should be given followed later by spirit lotions and cold bandages. Walking exercise should be freely given but no work at a faster pace until the pain and swelling have disappeared and precautions against further injury have been taken.

Treads are injuries to the coronet of one foot by the other fore or hind foot, as the case may be. They generally occur during turning, backing, shying, and sometimes by a tramp from another horse. The treatment of a tread is the same as that of common wounds.

Over-reach. This is a term applied to a wound or bruise on the foreleg caused by a blow from

the under and inner posterior edge of the shoe of the hind foot. It occurs usually in deep ground when the raising of the forehand is somewhat delayed. The bulbs of the heels and sides of the coronet are the usual seats of the injury, but occasionally it is above the fetlock on the back tendons.

Prevention. Keep the hind toes short, take practically nothing off the hind heels in the preparation of the foot, and shoe with round-toed hind shoes. India-rubber guards for the coronet and over-reaching boots for the legs are useful for horses which are especially liable to over-reaches when the going is on the heavy side.

Treatment. As the wound is inflicted by a downward blow there is generally a flap of skin hanging from it. In addition to cleanliness and general wound treatment an effort should be made to bandage the injury in such a way as to keep the cut ends in their proper position. When the over-reach is above the fetlock this is not difficult, but when it occurs in the bulb of the heel the bandage is difficult to adjust. This can be overcome by taking out one of the toe nails of the shoe and driving in a new one, leaving the point uncut and bent over.

The bandage is then wound round the heels and under the point of the nail.

Forging or clicking is a noise produced during action by the toe of the hind shoe striking the under inner or posterior edge of the fore shoe.

Causes.	*Prevention.*
1. Weakness.	Attention to general health.
2. Fatigue.	Ease pace.

A CAPPED HOCK. (*Page* 156.)

A CAPPED ELBOW. (*Page* 142.)

A CURB. (*Page* 156.)

A BONE SPAVIN. (*Page* 157.)

Plates 33 & 34

Causes.	*Prevention.*
3. Faulty shoeing.	Preserve the proper slope of the forefeet.
4. Bad conformation. Short in back and higher over croup than withers.	Shorten toes of the forefeet and shoe with turned-up toes. Use light shoes.

Good riding or driving so as to make the horse go in a collected and well-balanced manner is a necessary adjunct.

Lameness is best detected at a slow trot on hard level ground. The horse should be led out of the stable on a halter or snaffle-bridle with about 18 inches of free rein so as to allow the head to be in a direct line with the body during action. He should be led straight away from and back towards the observer for 30 yards. When an animal is lame it takes as much weight as possible off the painful limb and places extra weight on the sound one. In lameness of a fore limb the head is raised every time the lame leg is on the ground; in lameness of both forelegs the head is kept slightly higher than normal and the horse takes short strides or shuffles along instead of stepping out. In lameness of a hind limb he dwells more on the sound foot than the unsound one. In some lamenesses there is a hitching-up of the lame quarter, and in others a perceptible dragging of the toe. Certain obscure lamenesses can be detected only during the first few strides the animal takes after a definite rest. In some cases there is a marked tenderness in the limb when the horse is turning right or left about and in others a difference in the action may be seen from the side. In horses the majority of causes of lameness occur below the knee in front and at or below the hock behind. No

matter what the cause may be, it is a wise plan to have the foot thoroughly examined.

Splints are bony growths on the cannon-bones; and occur chiefly on the inside, though occasionally on the outside, of the forelegs. They occur mostly in young animals and in the first year of work and cause lameness whilst they are forming. They are not generally seen in horses which work at a walk and do not cause lameness at this pace in those which work at a faster pace. When splint lameness is suspected, flex the knee and run the finger along the inside of the cannon-bone and press on the likely parts which will cause the animal to flinch.

Treatment. Cold applications and walking exercise for two or three weeks will generally effect a cure in the simple forms of splint lameness.

Sore shins is a common cause of lameness amongst race-horses and is the result of concussion on the forelegs during the gallop, producing inflammation of the bone at the front and lower third of the cannon-bone.

Symptoms. The horse begins by going short in his gallop, especially if the ground is hard.

Treatment. Cold applications with exercise on soft ground for a fortnight. In severe cases an application of a blister will be necessary.

Sprains are a very common cause of lameness in horses and occur under all conditions, but they are more common among animals called upon to do fast or severe work. Sprains of tendons and ligaments are more frequent than those of muscles. In some cases they result from a sudden slip, but the majority occur when the muscles are fatigued and are powerless to preserve the co-ordination of movement and the balance of the body which are so essential during work. Horses not in regular

work and those which are " below par " are much more liable to sprains than those which are " fit and well " and whose muscular system is toned up to the state required for the particular work in hand. This quality of condition cannot be acquired quickly and is the result of sound feeding and sufficient healthy exercise, judiciously combined and continued over a long period to enable the muscles, joints, nerves, blood-vessels, heart, lungs, and digestion to attain that cumulative power which one expects to find in fit horses. With any curtailment of exercise from lameness or sickness the re-conditioning process must begin over again, though not quite to the same extent, if we desire to reduce the risk of sprain to a minimum.

In hunters and polo ponies this state of fitness can generally be continued throughout the season, but with race-horses it cannot be maintained indefinitely without loss of form and condition, or the risk of producing lameness. With intermittent periods of easy work and a change of diet they may be relied upon to perform their strenuous work with the best possible results.

Attention has already been directed to the relation of body grossness to liability to sprains ; even when the diet has been restricted to a suitable quantity, some horses eat their bedding during the night and become excessively gross. This can be avoided by bedding on peat moss or by feeding the horse on crushed oats only during the day and giving the hay ration at night.

Finally, every rider should know that hanging on the bit, rolling under the saddle or frequent changing of the legs are indications of fatigue which will result in sprains or some other form of lameness if a fast pace is maintained.

Sprains of the tendons and ligaments of the

forelegs develop gradually as a rule. It is important, therefore, to examine the legs for heat and tenderness after fast or strenuous work, and when such symptoms are present to commence local treatment in order to prevent a serious breakdown. At this stage lameness may or may not be present and in most cases the horse is all the better for walking exercise with a bandage support.

Treatment. There are various ways of treating sprains, but the main object of each is to get rid of any fluid between or around the fibres of the tendon or ligament and the uniting of any broken fibres. The first stages may be treated by the use of pressure bandages, antiphlogistine applications, or clay and salt. Such treatment, combined with local massage and moderate walking exercise for three weeks, will in slight cases ensure recovery sufficiently to enable the horse to resume more active work and thus get him into condition. In severe cases blistering or firing and a prolonged absence from work may be necessary.

Wind galls are soft round swellings on either side of the fetlock and are due to a distended condition of the synovial bursæ of the joint. They are easily compressed, painless, and seldom cause lameness, and are generally a sign of wear and tear in hard-worked animals. Bandaging with evenly distributed pressure combined with massage has a good effect in reducing them.

Enlarged fetlock joints and upright pastern joints are generally due to the effects of hard work. Providing the full movement of the joint is not impaired, horses in this condition will perform moderate work indefinitely without lameness.

Filled Legs. In certain illnesses and during enforced idleness from any cause, all four legs of a horse may become filled or swollen. It is due to a

passive congestion which disappears with exercise. When the leg only fills after work, it may be due to a blow or injury from striking itself. Horses hunting in a thorny country may have one or more legs swollen from the entrance of thorns into the skin.

Treatment. When due to enforced idleness, massage, bandaging, and exercise according to the case will be sufficient to fine them down. For injuries, fomentations or applications of antiphlogistine, and for thorns a similar treatment with a careful search for the offending bodies will generally suffice.

Ringbone is a term applied to a bony deposit on the pasterns between the fetlock and coronet, caused by concussion and appearing more often in the forelegs than the hind. They produce lameness, which incapacitates the animal from fast work, although often able to work at slower paces with no weight on the back.

Side bones are caused by the cartilages on the side of the hoof being partially or totally converted into bone. They are most common in heavy horses, and are mostly confined to the forefeet, being caused by direct injuries (treads or blows), concussion, or the use of calkins on the heels of shoes. They seldom prevent animals working at a slow pace, but those working at a fast pace require to be kept on soft ground and not exposed to the effects of concussion. When lameness appears after work, a day's rest with poultices on the feet will often give sufficient relief for the resumption of work.

Laminitis (Fever in the Feet) is an inflammation of the fleshy leaves and covering of the sensitive foot, and is caused by over-exertion especially after a period of inactivity. It is often a sequel to bowel trouble caused by feeding on rye, barley, or wheat,

and in mares is sometimes a sequel to septic inflammation of the uterus after parturition.

Symptoms. It is sudden in appearance, with heat and acute pain, usually in both forefeet; the horse is unwilling to move and is averse to lying down. When forced to move, the heels are brought to the ground first, and if he is backed the heels are dragged back on the ground. The gait is unmistakable to anyone who has seen it and it is difficult to get a foot held up long enough for the removal of the shoe; the breathing is distressed and to an inexperienced observer may be mistaken for indicating inflammation of the lungs.

Treatment. Give a physic ball and feed on sloppy bran and other laxative food for four or five days. Make the animal take fifteen minutes' walking exercise every four hours. After the first bout most of the acute pain will pass off and the animal will tolerate the shoes being removed. Place the patient in a loose box bedded down with peat moss, sawdust, or chopped straw to enable the feet to be moved without interference, and place cold swabs over the hoofs. The improvement under this treatment is remarkable during the course of a few days and reduces the risk of displacement of the pedal-bone and dropped sole which produce an incurable chronic lameness. When the horse can walk tolerably sound, a pair of light broad-webbed shoes with thin heels and turned-up toes should be put on to prevent breaking of the horn and to facilitate the movement of the feet pending the return to normal.

Sandcrack is a term applied to a fissure of the horn of the wall of the foot. It usually occurs at the inside quarter of the forefeet or at the toe of the hind feet, commencing at the coronet and extending downwards. It usually penetrates the thickness

of the wall into the sensitive structures beneath and causes lameness by pinching these during movement.

Causes. Any bad condition of health results in horn of a poor quality being formed which may give rise to sandcrack when unusual strain is put upon it. The continuous use of seated-out-shoes and paring of the frog induce sandcrack by throwing the weight of the animal on the crust of the foot instead of the crust outer portion of the sole bars and frog.

Treatment. As this usually entails a minor operation on the foot it is better to foment it to relieve lameness and call in a veterinary surgeon to ensure the early return of the horse to work.

Thrush is a diseased condition of the frog, the chief symptom of which is an offensive discharge from the cleft and sides.

Causes. Wet, dirt, and negligence. Standing in ill-drained stables in contact with urine and dung is the most frequent cause, and it is thus more common in the hind feet than the fore.

Prevention. Washing daily with a hand water-brush, picking out the feet at each stable-time.

Treatment. Thoroughly wash out the cleft and sides of the frog by means of a flat piece of wood and some soft tow and hot water. Remove any ragged or partially detached parts and dress daily with Stockholm tar after cleansing.

Corns are bruises to the sensitive sole at the angle of the heel between the wall and the bar. They are easily recognised by a reddened appearance due to the extravasation of blood in the part.

Causes. Wearing the shoe for too long a time without removal; wearing short, narrow-heeled, and too thick-heeled shoes, and excessive lowering of the heels during shoeing. Horses with weak

heels and flat soles are particularly liable to corns.

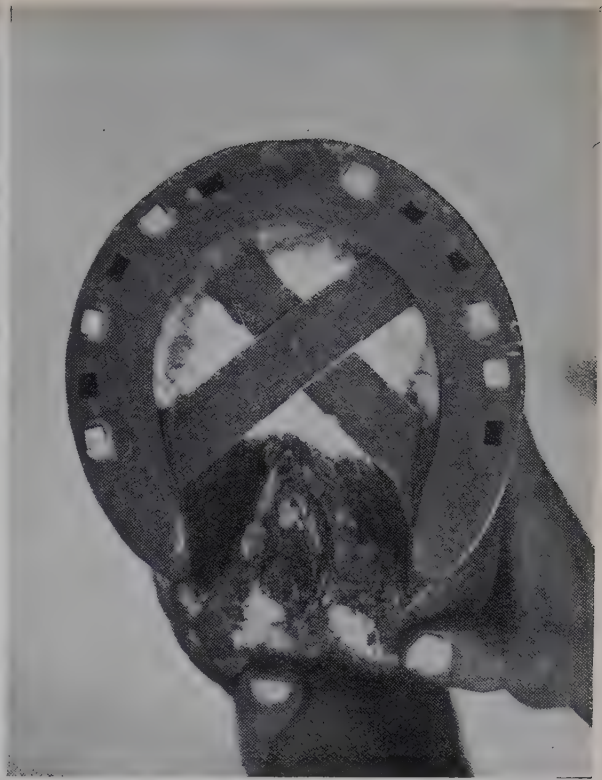
Symptoms. There may or may not be lameness but when this is present there is nothing specially diagnostic about it. The foot is hot and tender over the part affected, and tapping it with a hammer or pressing it with a pair of farrier's pincers causes flinching. If neglected, there is acute pain and pus formation which may break out at the top of the hoof. Treatment in the early stages consists simply in removing the cause, namely, undue pressure. In slight cases, removal of a small portion of the bruised horn and a good-fitting shoe will be sufficient, but when lameness is present soaking the foot in hot water or poulticing it will be necessary. If pus has formed, free vent should be given to it and antiseptic dressings applied after fomenting. Subsequently the use of a three-quarter shoe or a light bar shoe for a month will ensure soundness for work.

Bruises and wounds to the sole and frog arise from picked up nails, broken glass, stumps of wood, and sharp stones. Excessive paring of the sole during shoeing predisposes horses to this form of injury. They may be detected by the presence of a red stain or by pressing over the part with a pair of pincers.

Treatment. Removal of the foreign bodies, fomentations, and antiseptic packs in cases where the wound penetrates the sole. The best method of keeping foot dressings in their place is by inserting two small pieces of flexible hoop-iron crossways from the toe to the heel. These are easily removed and replaced and ensure exclusion of dirt and dung as well as the correct adjustment of the dressing used. Pricks occur from nails penetrating the sensitive parts of the foot and presses are caused

THE FRONT SURFACE OF A SHOE

SHOWING THE POSITION AND SHAPE OF THE PIECES OF METAL FOR THE RETENTION OF A FOOT DRESSING.



Plates 35 & 36

THE GROUND SURFACE OF THE SHOE WITH THE DRESSING IN POSITION

A SPEEDY CUTTING SHOE. (*Page* 144.)

Plates 37 & 38

METHOD OF ATTACHING THE PART OF THE HOOF AND SHOE WHICH IS INFLICTING AN INJURY IN SPEEDY CUTTING.
(*Page* 144.)

by nails being driven too near the sensitive parts. Pain and lameness may be noticed immediately after the accident or may pass unobserved for one or two days or even a week, by which time pus may have formed.

Symptoms. Heat in the foot and pain on pressure by the pincers. When the pain is severe the horse may rest the foot on the toe.

Treatment. Having located the seat of pain with the pincers, the shoe should be removed and the horn cleaned lightly with a rasp ; a thin shaving of the sole should now be made to see if any injury or coarse nail-hole can be detected. Having fixed on this, it should be pared out with a searcher and exit given to any pus which may have formed. If the lameness is due only to a press, the nail-hole should be filled with an antiseptic and the horse rested for a few days. In pricks, fomentations with daily antiseptic dressings are required till all discharge has ceased. With prompt treatment pricks seldom lame a horse for long, but if neglected may result in serious trouble.

Injuries and Lameness of the Hind Leg. These are not of frequent occurrence to the parts above the hock joint. Sprains of the hip joint are occasioned by slipping in the stall, on the road, or in turning round sharply. In trotting, the lame quarter is moved with a slight tilt.

Treatment. Rest and fomentations which may have to be followed by a blister.

Hip Down is a term applied to a fracture of one of the prominent points of the hip-bone. It is caused by animals falling sideways or hitting themselves passing through a stable door or narrow gateway. It is best detected by standing behind the horse, when the injured hip looks rounder than its fellow. When this fracture occurs it is very

difficult for reunion to take place because of the powerful muscles attached to the hip-bone.

Treatment. Put the horse in slings or tie on the short rack for three weeks and foment to relieve pain. As a rule cases recover, but the injured hip is rounder than the sound one.

Stifle Slip is a dislocation of the stifle-cap and occurs among very young animals and those out of condition. It is due to cramp of the muscles of the hind quarter. The leg is dragged behind and cannot be flexed or brought forward ; and there is a perceptible swelling on the outside of the stifle due to the displaced bone.

Treatment. The dislocation may be reduced by putting a rope round the pastern and pulling the leg forward. The horse should be backed at the same time and an assistant should push the displaced bone forwards and slightly downwards. When replaced, tie the foot forwards for 24 hours to a rope passed round the neck.

Capped Hock is a term applied to an injury to the point of the hock resulting in a collection of serum between the skin and tendon. It is generally self-inflicted and results from kicking the side of the stall or box. It rarely incapacitates an animal from work. The most simple form of treatment consists in covering the swollen part with melted glue, renewed if necessary after a ten days' interval. The cause of the kicking should be ascertained and steps taken to prevent a recurrence (see **Vices**).

Curb is an enlargement at the back of the hock, about six inches below the point, and may be best observed by standing at the side of the animal. It is caused by a sprain of the ligaments in this region, and usually results in lameness which may be cured, but the enlargement invariably remains. Horses with curby-shaped hocks are very liable to

curb and this conformation of hock is often hereditary.

Treatment. High-heeled shoe, rest, and blister.

Thoroughpin is a term applied to a tursel enlargement of the hock joint which appears just in front and above the point of the hock. When pressed with the finger on one side of the limb it bulges out on the other side. It is caused by overstrain, especially during fast or severe work. Small thoroughpins are often seen among hunters which have had a hard season and are unattended with lameness. When lameness is present they generally yield to a very mild blister applied once a day for three days and repeated after intervals of a week.

Bog Spavin is a swelling at the front and inner side of the hock and is due to an excessive quantity of synovia in the joint. It rarely causes lameness and when this is present the enlargement will be found tense and hot and painful to the touch.

Treatment. Rest and cold applications followed by a mild blister.

Bone Spavin is a bony enlargement which forms as a result of disease in the inner and lower side of the hock joint. There are two rows of small bones in the hock serving to diminish concussion. In spavin lameness these bones become inflamed and united into a solid mass with a varying amount of bony deposit thrown out on the inner part of the hock. Horses with small " tied in " hocks and those with the points of the hocks too close together (cow-hocked) are predisposed to spavin ; and hunters from the nature of their work suffer more than other breeds.

Symptoms. Lameness, usually accompanied by a dragging of the toe, or excessive wear of the shoe at the toe. The lameness is intensified after a hard

day's work and may disappear with exercise. When once the bones have united and the deposit does not interfere with the flexion of the joint, horses may remain practically sound for years.

Treatment. As this usually necessitates firing it is better to call in a veterinary surgeon as early as possible.

Stable Tricks and Vices. Wind-sucking and crib-biting are two forms of the same vice. In the first, the animal arches the neck, draws the head into the chest and swallows a gulp of air; in the second, the animal leans on or seizes the manger with the teeth and repeats the process with a characteristic grunt. In all probability both are of nervous origin. The effect of the frequent use of the teeth on hard objects is that the front of the teeth of both upper and lower jaws gradually wears away.

Idleness and ennui are strong predisposing causes to this vice, which may readily be learnt from a neighbour, and, once acquired, it is difficult to check. Horses addicted to this habit are subject to flatulent colic, indigestion, and loss of condition.

Prevention. Horses should be kept out of the stable as long as possible daily and fed off the ground, which will entail a longer period for eating food and more occupation in the stable. Placing the horse in a loose box with no manger or anything to lay hold of, or turning about in the stall and keeping it constantly on the pillar-chains, may minimise any evil effects resulting from the vice. Flute-bits, muzzles, and neck-straps have been used with varying success for a time but none of these will effect a cure. During the last few years an operation involving excision of part of the lower muscles of the neck has been found successful in curing eighty per cent of the animals operated on.

Weaving is acquired in the same way as wind-

sucking and crib-biting. The animal swings the head from side to side, lifting each forefoot in turn as the head is swayed to the opposite side. If the head is attached to a chain it makes a distracting noise. The habit may be intermittent or constant. In the latter case the animal does not get sufficient rest, but no special accident or disease can be directly attributed to it. Weavers should be placed in a loose box and fed off the ground so as to keep them occupied when in the stable.

Walking the Box is another habit of nervous origin. It is mostly seen in young thoroughbreds when first put into training. They walk round the box continuously throughout the night and thus get no rest and lose condition. Putting them into a stall where they can see other animals, or giving them a companion such as a goat, will often break them of the habit.

Biting is more often seen in stallions than in mares and geldings, and if not checked in its early stages will develop into a serious vice. A nervous groom should never be in charge of a biting or vicious horse of any kind, since firmness combined with kindness is essential to their care and management. A side-stick tied at the head-collar and the side of the roller is the best way of preventing harm whilst being handled or groomed.

Kicking in the Stable is a troublesome vice and many plans may have to be tried before one can be found to stop it. If the cause can be ascertained it is of considerable help in finding an effectual remedy. It may be due to want of work, nervousness, the presence of mice and rats, teasing or cruelty by ill-tempered grooms. It is more common in mares than geldings and is more often done during the night than day. Padding the sides of the stall and stall-posts with coir matting prevents

noise, which is often a stimulus to repetition, and lessens the chance of injury to the limbs. Bunches of furze hung on the rear sides of the stall will sometimes stop the horse kicking by the pain caused in the act. A shackle above one of the hind fetlocks with a few links of heavy chain attached which hits the opposite leg during kicking may prove successful. When vermin are suspected, a cat should be left in the stable during the night. Whatever plan is adopted a good groom, firm and even-tempered, is essential.

Sleeping when Standing in the Stable. Some horses sleep in this position and never lie down. At first it appears to do little harm, but in course of time the horse becomes prematurely worn out and eventually may fall and injure its back or the front of its fetlocks. The habit may have originated from the horse, at some time or other, having fallen into a ditch when out at grass or having been cast in the stable. The remedy is to induce the animal to lie down and a loose box may tempt him to do so. If this fails, a pair of fetlock boots should be put on to prevent injury to the fetlocks if the animal falls.

Tearing the clothing may be prevented by fixing a piece of stout sole leather to the back strap of the nose-band of the head-collar sufficiently deep to reach below the level of the lips. This will prevent the horse seizing the clothing with its teeth.

Depraved appetite is evinced by the horse gnawing the walls or eating its own dung. The former may arise from a mild form of indigestion and may be cured by fixing a salt block on the wall in front of the manger or by the presence of a lump of rock salt in the manger. If the habit continues, a solution of aloes painted daily on the wall for a time should be tried. Eating the dung is a filthy vice and in due course produces indigestion and

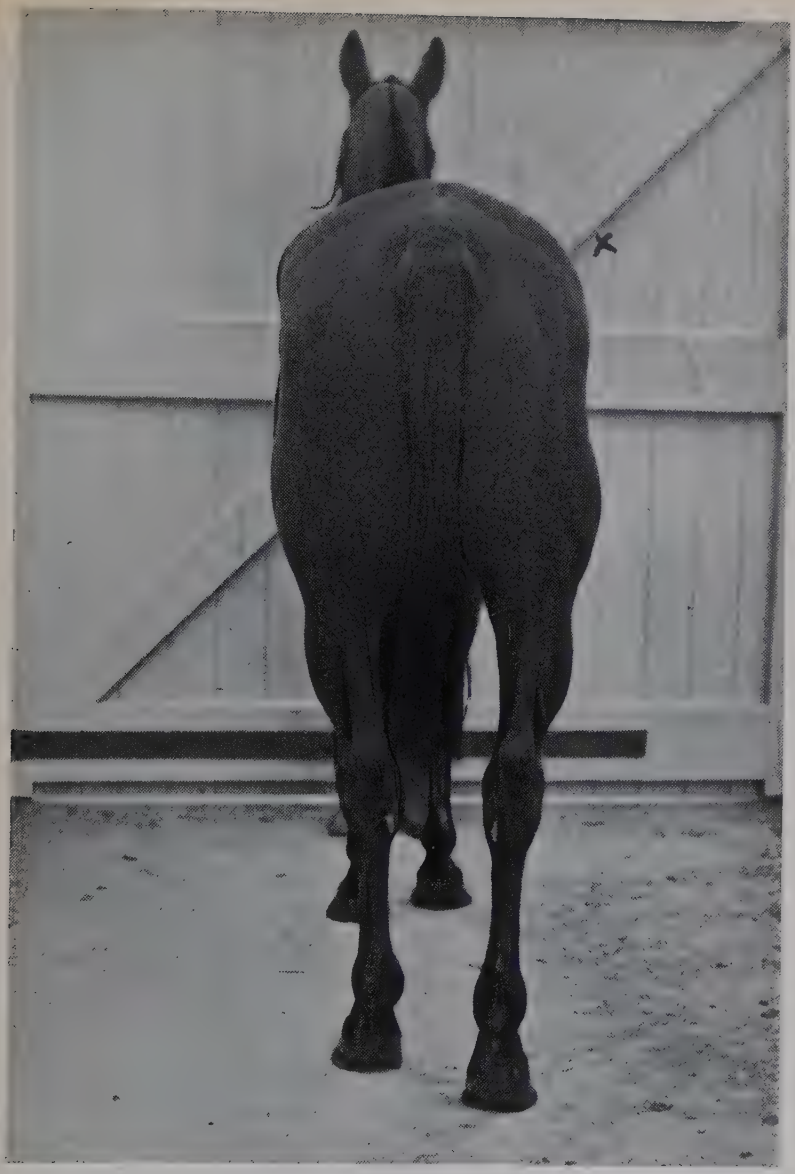


Plate 39

DROPPED HIP. (*Page* 155.)

Plate 40

AN INTELLIGENT HEAD AND EYE

THIS DENOTES A GENEROUS NATURE. ONE OF THE MOST IMPORTANT POINTS TO NOTE WHEN BUYING A HORSE.

loss of condition. The horse should be put in a stall and secured by two head-ropes, one to each side of the stall, of sufficient length to enable it to lie down but short enough to prevent it turning in the stall to drop the dung within its reach.

CHAPTER XI

BUYING A HORSE

THE heading of this chapter encompasses a wide field, as the price to be paid and the particular class of animal required are varying factors. Consequently it is necessary to consider the problem within certain limitations and confine ourselves in particular to the buying of hunters.

If a man is a good judge of these he will, with experience, eventually be able to rely on his own judgment in selecting other types.

In the case of a race-horse, in addition to make and shape, both breeding and action must influence his decision.

In the purchase of a polo pony, the thoroughbred hunter stamp might be his model but other and very definite factors must here influence his choice. An obviously kind temperament as expressed by the eye and general demeanour, a head so placed on a well-set-up neck that the animal appears to have a light and well-balanced carriage, indications of a ready compliance to control by the bit.

However, we can not now go into the subject of polo ponies, as this is dealt with in a later chapter.

Needless to say, each class of animal may be bought on its respective performance, but this obviously necessitates a long purse. But to return to our case in point, buying a hunter :

The Stamp Required for the Country. The first consideration is what stamp of horse is required. Is it intended for the shires, that is a grass country with fly fences, where hounds can race over good scenting land with nothing to stop them? Under these conditions, a blood type of galloping horse is essential. This is the most expensive class of hunter, and if we take the average man riding 13 stone his horse should be 16 hands or more with substance and quality. In such a country, where the fields are large and undulating, his stamina and speed will be put to the test in a good hunt. He must also be a bold fencer, who will jump unhesitatingly if his rider is to shake clear of the crowd. Apart from this, his manners must be reliable when standing with a host of other horses around his heels in a gateway. Finally, with many of the Midland packs there will be little leisure, as a huntsman, with a large field continually encroaching on his hounds, must be quick on the move to give them a chance, and the last man through a crowded gateway will be constantly galloping to catch up, often unaware as to whether hounds are running or not.

In what is commonly called a provincial country, but what we must now understand as that of a more cramped nature, with a proportion of cold scenting plough, sticky fences, ditches, and banks, an active, thick-set type of horse is suitable; in fact, cleverness more than speed and boldness is required.

Thus we come to the conclusion that whenever possible it is advisable to buy a horse that has already been hunted in a country similar to that in which you propose to hunt. It is safe to take a horse that has had experience in Ireland to any of our banking countries, though he would require a

certain amount of schooling before he would be able to negotiate Leicestershire with confidence.

There is no doubt that the surest and most satisfactory time to buy a hunter is during the winter, when he can be tried with hounds. In the first place, by judicious enquiry and personal observation, there will be some opportunity of finding out his ability as a performer before the actual trial, assuming that he has been hunted in that country. Unfortunately, except at the end of the season, it is the most expensive time to buy a hunter.

A Trial with Hounds. Whenever possible, it is advisable to try a horse with hounds before you buy him. Remember that until you have made the deal, he is not your property, and though you are at liberty thoroughly to test him over fences and get some idea as to whether he can gallop and stay, keeping him out for a long day at the end of a good hunt is putting the owner to unnecessary risk, and if by misfortune the horse should be injured, you are in a somewhat awkward position. Obviously the owner takes the risk of the trial, but it is up to the prospective buyer not to take on too great liabilities.

In addition to his jumping, what you require to know is, whether he has a good mouth and manners in a crowd ; in short, is he reasonably easy to ride ? Will he let you open gates on him, and turn away from other horses ? You must also make up your mind as to whether he has sufficient speed to see a fast hunt and whether he can apparently stay. Needless to say, the two latter points are largely dependent on age and condition. If you are unlucky enough to strike a bad day, you must judge as best you can, and be guided by what you may already know about the horse. There are

sure to be other people who can confirm your opinion on these points. As you will certainly want to know whether he is a good fencer, you must take what opportunities you can to ascertain this.

Always enquire if he has any peculiarities, as the vendor, knowing you are out for a trial, is naturally anxious that you should ride him in the way he believes will be most suitable to his horse. In any case, once you are in the saddle, endeavour to get on good terms with him and give him credit for a good mouth and a kind temperament, and he will go all the better in consequence.

If the price is suitable and you are sure that you like him, do not keep him out any longer than is necessary, once your mind is made up. It only remains after this to have him vetted, before you finally close the deal.

If, on the other hand, you are doubtful at first, you can reasonably continue to ride him for a longer period, and if you are still of the same mind, tell the owner and let the horse go home without running further risks.

The Price. With regard to the price, it is quite impossible to lay down anything definite. The Leicestershire type of horse that is sound, up to weight, a brilliant performer, and not more than nine years old is an exceedingly valuable animal. You are lucky to buy him at three hundred and may have to pay six, whereas the horse up to the same weight in an unfashionable country may be bought for half the price. A light-weight horse for any country should be obtained within the latter figures and often for considerably less, unless it is really exceptional and classified as a high-class lady's hunter. If one's means do not permit of these figures, one must be content with a horse that

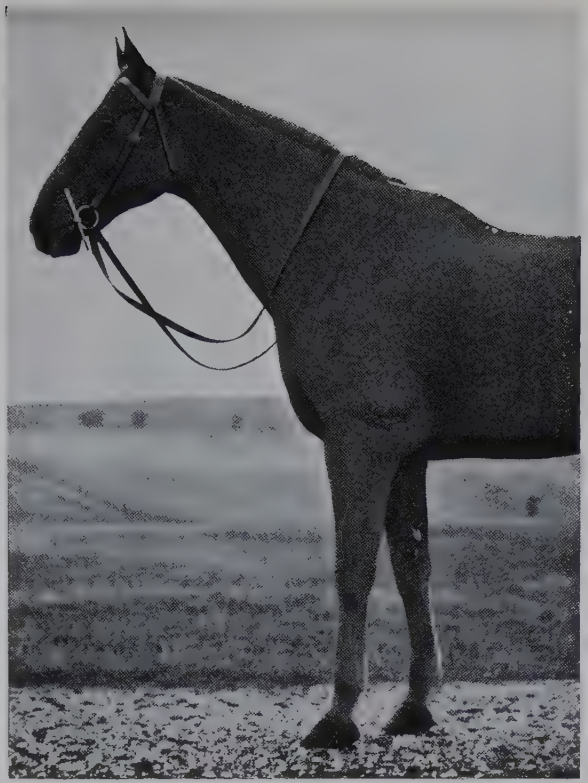
has some recognised crab, but at the same time is a thoroughly useful animal. He may be a slight whistler, but still capable of living with hounds. He may have a hard mouth and, though controllable, he will be a tiring ride. He may have what is called a cold back, and kick when he is first saddled up and mounted. He may be liable to stumble or shy on the road. He may be plain-looking, but at the same time a really useful horse, or possibly he has reached the age of twelve or more, and owing to his limited period of usefulness, he cannot command a high price.

After riding him you must weigh the pros and cons in your mind and ask yourself, in spite of his limitations, do you consider that he will suit you. In short, will you get value and sport for your money?

There will, of course, be occasions when you can try a horse and jump him, though possibly not with hounds. In all probability your venture will be limited to the confines of a grass field containing two or three fences, which are well known to the horse. The procedure, however, will be on the same lines as those described later when trying a young animal.

If you are buying from a really good horseman and the possible purchase is known to be a difficult ride, either a confirmed puller or refuser, don't imagine that you are going to put him right.

Trying a Young Horse. When you are fully capable of making a hunter yourself you can buy a good youngster considerably cheaper than the made article. But you must be a competent judge and know how a young horse should feel when you ride him at his various paces. There should be elasticity and freedom of action when he moves, and though his mouth may not be made, he should not



A WELL-SET-ON HEAD AND NECK

UNFORTUNATELY THE LEGS ARE SET ON SHORT UPRIGHT PASTERNS

A WEAK EWE NECK

Plates 43 & 44

GOOD SLOPING SHOULDERS

STRAIGHT SHOULDERS

THE HIGH WITHERS ARE MISLEADING AND ARE LIABLE TO GIVE A WRONG IMPRESSION TO AN INEXPERIENCED JUDGE. IF ONE COVERS UP THE WITHERS ONE CAN REALISE THIS FACT. THE REAL TEST IS THE FREEDOM AND USE A HORSE MAKES OF HIS SHOULDERS.

be heavy on your hands. He should give you the impression of having a good natural balance, not obviously heavy in front and clumsy in his action. He should carry his saddle so as to necessitate a nice length of rein. He should further give you the impression of having ample scope in front and freedom of his shoulders; trotting downhill will enable you to form an opinion on this point. In his gallop he should put his forelegs well out in front of him, yet appearing to do so smoothly and without effort, and when jumped over quite a small fence, he should give you a feeling of power behind the saddle.

Though he will naturally ride "green," there is no reason why he should be wild and excitable, if he has not already been spoilt, in which case he is best left alone.

Ride him quietly at a walk and trot so that he may settle down and have some confidence in you before you attempt to try him at faster paces, and then, if he appears to "hot up" or ride with his head in the air, it is advisable to discard him.

In addition to trying him in a saddle, you must consider his conformation and action when run in hand, in the same way as when buying a horse at auction.

Buying at Auction. When bidding for a horse under the hammer, one is dependent upon information available and the description in the catalogue of his performances. His veterinary certificate may be lodged at the office of the auctioneers, and you buy him on that certificate. On the other hand, he may go up to sale under the warranty of a good hunter, that is sound in wind and eyes and capable of being hunted. It is then up to the buyer to safeguard himself by having the horse examined,

and should he not answer this warranty according to your own vet, you can return him.

If a hunter, warranted to be quiet to ride, is later proved to be dangerous and unridable, he may be returned, but the test and any subsequent action taken must be carried out as soon as possible after the sale.

The above are definite guarantees, but you must take the risk of your purchase being an indifferent performer, and his mouth and manners may not be all that you anticipated. Remember, too, that a horse may go well with one man and not with another, but, generally speaking, those sent up by owners who are known will answer their descriptions fairly.

With regard to the conformation of a hunter, whether he be required for grass or plough country, there are certain points that are eminently desirable.

Let us now consider the case where, owing to the impossibility of having a trial ride previous to the sale, you are consequently largely dependent upon appearances. We will assume that you know the stamp of horse that is required for the country in which you intend to hunt.

Conformation of a Hunter. Let us imagine that you are looking forward to a season in the Midlands, which entails being mounted on horses that can gallop. First of all, select those that you consider to be up to your weight, and then have them led out in turn for your inspection. If you know little about an animal and now dislike the expression of his eye, do not waste further time on him. A horse with little pig eyes or one that shows an evil disposition and a wild eye or possibly a prominent forehead, which frequently denotes sulkiness, should be avoided, as these are fairly reliable indications of character.

Plate 46

A LONG BACK AND BAD SHOULDERS

NOTE THE DIFFERENCE IN CONFORMATION WITH THE HORSE ON THE BACK OF THIS PAGE. LENGTH BEHIND THE SADDLE MAY BE COMPENSATED BY TWO GOOD ENDS. THIS PECULIARITY APPEARS MUCH MORE PRONOUNCED WHEN A HORSE IS TRAINED FINE.

Plate 46

A GOOD TYPE OF HEAVY-WEIGHT CHARGER

POSSESSING NATURAL BALANCE, ROBUSTNESS AND BOLD OUTLOOK

The next item in order of importance is the shoulders. These should slope well back from the point to the withers, and be so placed that they will give you the impression that he will carry the saddle well behind the withers. If you draw the conclusion that you would be riding on the top of his withers and the fall of his shoulders is straight instead of oblique, you can assume that he fails in this respect, as good sloping shoulders are, with very few exceptions, indispensable to a good fencer. It is this slope that will save him in an emergency. The shoulder should be lean and muscular and in front should not appear " chesty " or heavy like that of a draught horse. It is most exceptional for a horse that is very wide where the fore limbs are attached to the body to gallop well. On the other hand, an abnormally narrow-chested horse is unlikely to be capable of carrying weight. Well-developed withers, i.e. not flat and fleshy, will usually be found in conjunction with good shoulders.

Quality should be discernible in the animal's limbs, head, mane, tail, skin, and general appearance. Big, bold eyes with good width between them are very desirable, as the horse's intelligence and character are expressed through these. Width between the jaws is also important, restriction here and any tendency to swollen glands behind the jaws will interfere with the proper flexion of the head from the poll, and good head-carriage under these circumstances is very doubtful.

Now let us regard the animal broadside on to judge whether he has sufficient length of neck from the poll to the withers. A horse in good condition should be wide across the neck when felt from the top. A ewe neck is a weakness, and if the animal has a natural tendency to poke his nose in

conjunction with this malformation he is unlikely to be a pleasant ride.

When standing naturally, but in an alert position, the angle of the axis of the neck with the head should be between ninety and one hundred degrees. A more acute angle denotes the possibility of unsoundness developing in the wind, whereas a considerably greater angle, which will normally be in conjunction with a wrongly-set-on neck, indicates a bad head-carriage and consequent evasion of control from the bit.

The neck should be in proportion to the size of the animal and should have the appearance of a slight but natural curve.

The forelegs should be straight with freedom of the elbows on either side of the chest. Strength and length of the forearm are desirable, but length below the knee to the fetlock is equally undesirable in a hunter. A short cannon-bone denotes short but strong ligaments and tendons attached thereto, as it is these back tendons and suspensory ligaments that are a common source of unsoundness in hunters.

Big, flat knees supported on flat limbs are required. In a clean-limbed horse the front of the cannon-bone and the back of the tendons should be on parallel lines. The line of the back tendon and ligaments should be seen and should feel both clean and hard. If the leg runs up lighter from the pastern to below the knee, obvious weakness is indicated. A horse that is back at the knee when viewed from the side is unlikely to stand great strain.

Filled fetlock joints, especially in the region where the suspensory ligaments come round the joint, denote previous trouble there. Avoid limbs that turn inwards at the knees.

Splints, once they are formed, should not cause

Photo. W. A. Rouch **Plate 47**

"DIRECTOR." HEAVY-WEIGHT HUNTER

A HORSE WITH AMPLE SCOPE AND GREAT LIBERTY OF ACTION WITH GOOD BONE. RATHER PLAIN HEAD AND HOCKS PLACED RATHER FAR BACK. COMPARE WITH "WAIT AND SEE." (*See over.*)

Photo. W. A. Rouch **Plate 48**

MAJOR V. D. S. WILLIAMS' "WAIT AND SEE"

A FINE TYPE OF HEAVY-WEIGHT HUNTER. HAS NOT THE BONE OF "DIRECTOR," BUT SHOWS MORE QUALITY AND IS ALTOGETHER A MORE SYMMETRICAL HORSE.

further trouble unless so pronounced that a horse is likely to knock them or so placed as to interfere with the ligaments of the leg.

Horses with toes that turn out are apt to knock themselves, and those with the toe turned in will dish (swing the leg outwards). Both are decided crabs, but, if the failing is infinitesimal and does not affect their action in any marked degree, they may be useful horses, though the defect will diminish their value.

Discard an animal with uneven pasterns or feet, flat feet where the soles are flat instead of being arched, and small, boxy feet with contracted heels.

A hunter cannot be too deep through the chest, as this, in conjunction with well-sprung ribs behind the groove of the girths, is an indication of stamina and staying power.

Avoid unnecessary length of the back behind the saddle, though this may be considerably compensated by really strong and muscular loins. Strength here (the loins) is indispensable for a good hunter. A slack loin and a gap between the hips and the last ribs are serious defects. Horses that run up in the stomach, especially in conjunction with flat ribs and a long back, will not pull out in their turn regularly during the hunting season. The tail should be set high in the quarters and it is generally noticeable that the right sort of horse carries it well. There should be an appearance of ample scope from the hip to the hock.

The ground a good hunter stands over should be due to the slope of his shoulders and the length of his quarters from the hip backwards, and not to a lengthy middlepiece.

Regarded from behind, the quarters should be round at the top, gradually swelling with muscle on both sides as one looks down and close together

below the tail. The second thighs should be muscular and supported on two symmetrical hocks, which should neither turn in nor outwards, as both defects indicate weakness. Big, clean, bony hocks are essential for a hunter. Puffiness about the hocks predisposes weakness or trouble actually existing, apart from any normal lameness due to curb, thoroughpin, or spavin. Sickle hocks indicate liability to throw out curbs. The joint itself should appear wide in front with the point well developed, and the limb below, which should not lack bone, should be perpendicular to the ground when a horse is standing level on all four legs. A capped hock is unsightly but, except in extreme cases, not an unsoundness.

Pasterns that are too long and sloping, thus bringing the rear of the fetlock close to the ground, are a decided weakness in heavy going. On the other hand, abnormally short, straight pasterns are liable to increase the jar of the fore limbs in hard going, conditions which are less likely to affect a hunter in winter.

Do not be unduly hurried in your scrutiny, and remember, should one find all the good points existing and all the bad points eliminated, one is regarding a very high-class and expensive animal, if he is sound.

Horse Shown in Hand. Finally, it will be necessary to see the horse run in hand. A long, swinging walk generally denotes a good mover in his gallop. But at the former pace and at the trot his action must be true and straight. He must not go too close or in any way cross his legs. His gait must be level ; he will drop on the near fore if he is favouring the off fore limb and vice versa. Exaggerated knee action at the trot presupposes high action at the gallop and lack of speed. At this pace he should appear to

Plates 49–52

LEGS GOOD AND BAD

TOP LEFT. BAD FORE-LEGS TIED IN BELOW THE KNEE.

TOP RIGHT. WEAK SLOPING PASTERNS.

BOTTOM LEFT. WEAK SICKLE HOCKS.

BOTTOM RIGHT. GOOD CLEAN FORE-LEGS SHOWING THE LINE OF THE SUSPENSORY LIGAMENTS AND BACK-TENDONS.

NOTE THE DIFFERENCE IN THE HOCKS AND PASTERNS OF THE HORSE ON THE BACK OF THIS PAGE.

Plate 53

A HIGH-CLASS LIGHT-WEIGHT THOROUGHBRED HUNTER

A SYMMETRICAL TYPE AND AS HIS APPEARANCE INDICATES AN UNDENIABLE PERFORMER.

spring equally from all four limbs, putting his forelegs well out in front of him, and the chances are that in his gallop he will have good use of his shoulders with an easy extension of his fore limbs and proper use of his hind legs. A stilted, choppy action of the fore limbs indicates the reverse, and the dragging of a hind toe points to some form of hock trouble, either forming or actually present.

Experience has taught me to fight shy of a horse with an evil expression, no matter how good his conformation and action may be. If he possesses the latter qualities he will certainly be expensive, and ninety-nine times out of a hundred a great disappointment.

On the other hand, if you are buying horses wild off a ranch, you must expect a wild expression in their eyes on first aquaintance, and this may be disregarded provided it is not a little pig eye set in a sullen head.

CHAPTER XII

BITS AND SPURS

SPURS. On first consideration there may appear to be no connection between bits and spurs. But in reality the application of the one is closely associated with the other. As already stated, the hands control the animal's forehand and the leg his hind quarters, the co-ordinated application of both controlling the whole mass. A horse may possess a sensitive mouth or the reverse, and similarly his flanks may be sensitive or otherwise. The tender or well-made mouth requires light handling and a mild bit, while an animal naturally responsive to the rider's leg requires little more than the pressure of the calf. Normally, the membranes of the jaw are more sensitive than the flanks, and consequently the application of the leg during his training must be of a more vigorous nature than that of the hand. A really sluggish animal with an insensitive skin may even require sharp spurs occasionally to induce him to obey the leg. But this is most exceptional, and a tap with the whip to reinforce the action of the leg will usually produce the required result.

At the same time there is no doubt that many animals will not respond to the pressure of the leg until they are thoroughly trained, and in such cases the use of the heel or a blunt spur is necessary. As the drawing up of the heel misplaces the position of the leg, it is obvious that a spur worn on a high

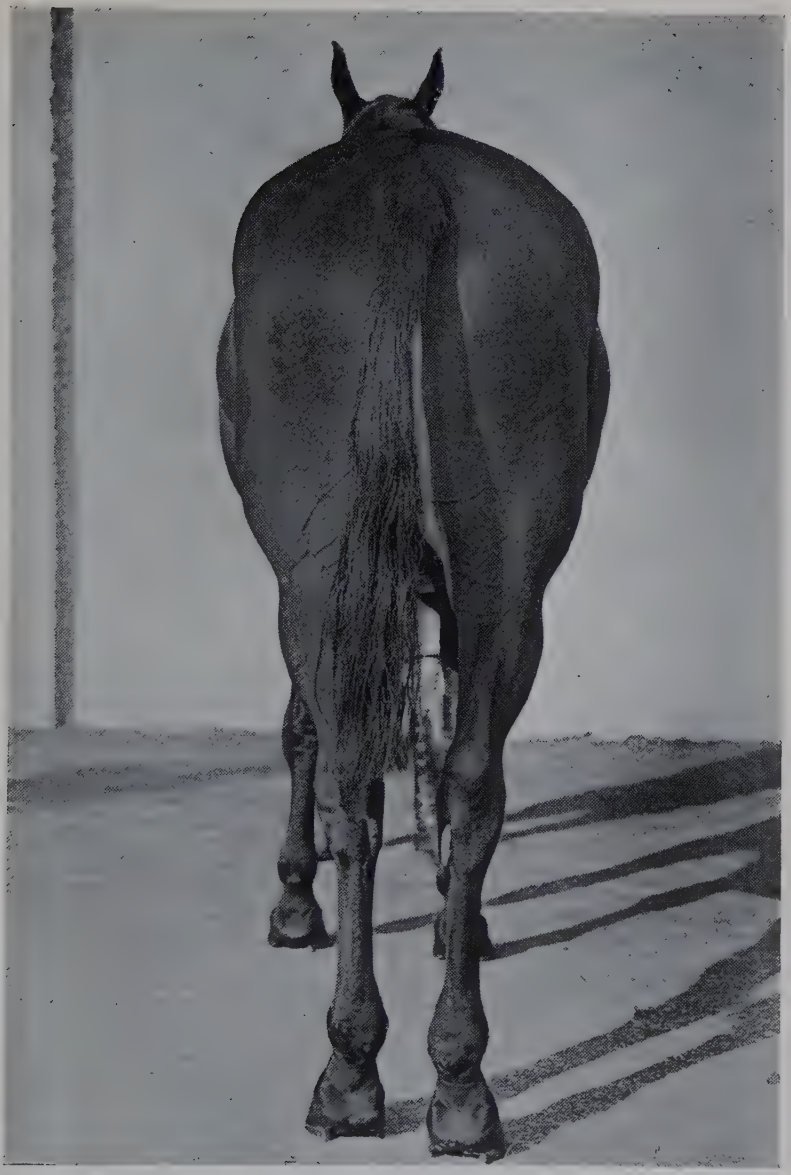
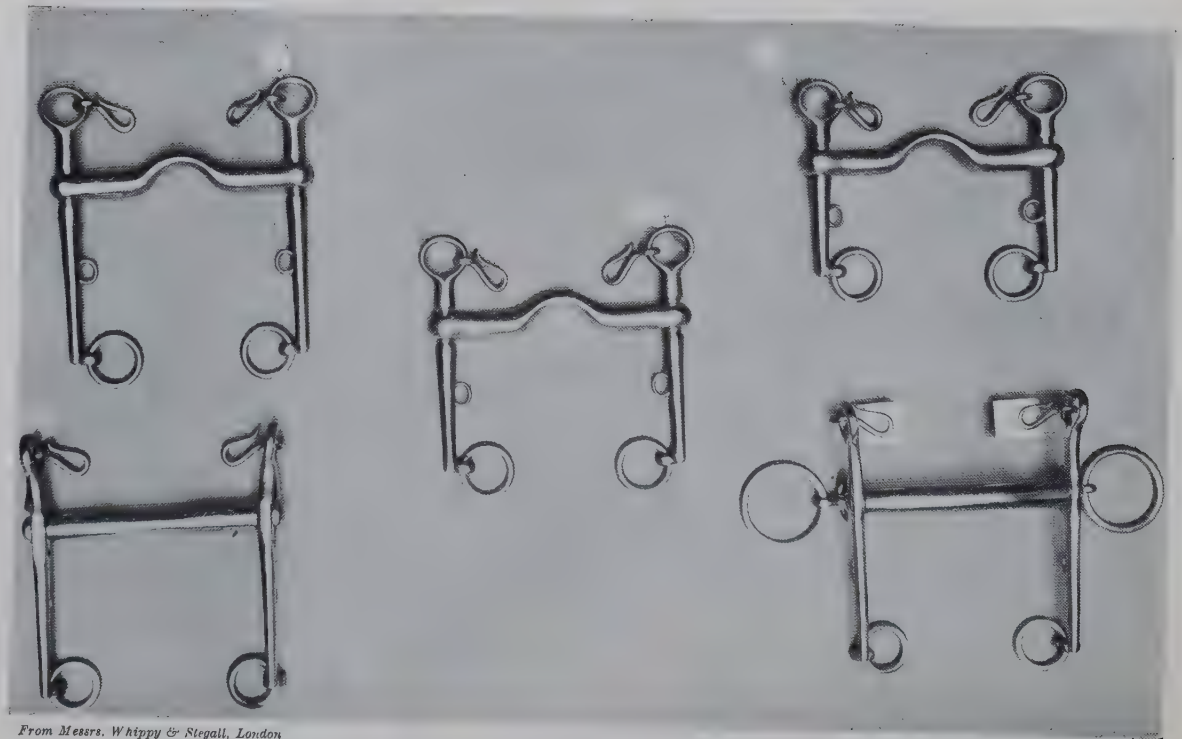


Plate 54

STRAIGHT LEVEL HOCKS



From Messrs. Whippy & Stegall, London

Plate 55

BITS

TOP LEFT, CENTRE AND TOP RIGHT. LONG, MEDIUM AND SHORT CURB BITS OF PROPORTIONATE SEVERITY. ROTATES AND PLAYS UP AND DOWN, OFTEN EFFECTIVE ON A HORSE THAT HANGS ON THE HAND.

BOTTOM LEFT. BANBURY BIT. THE BAR BOTH

BOTTOM RIGHT. RUGBY PELHAM—AN EXCELLENT POLO BIT.

counter is preferable. As the animal begins to respond regularly, the pressure of the leg alone should be employed. In fact, on a well-trained animal, spurs are really unnecessary and if only the short-necked type are worn, one will find that simple leg pressure will normally suffice, but the spur, being carried, can be used if an animal hesitates to obey this first aid. It has been suggested that sharp spurs are cruel, and rightly so, while some writers go so far as to state that blunt spurs are even worse, as they bruise a horse's ribs.

When mounted on an animal that has not been trained to obey leg pressure, what do they do? They naturally resort to a kick with the heel or the application of the whip. Surely it is splitting hairs to discuss which is the more humane of the two.

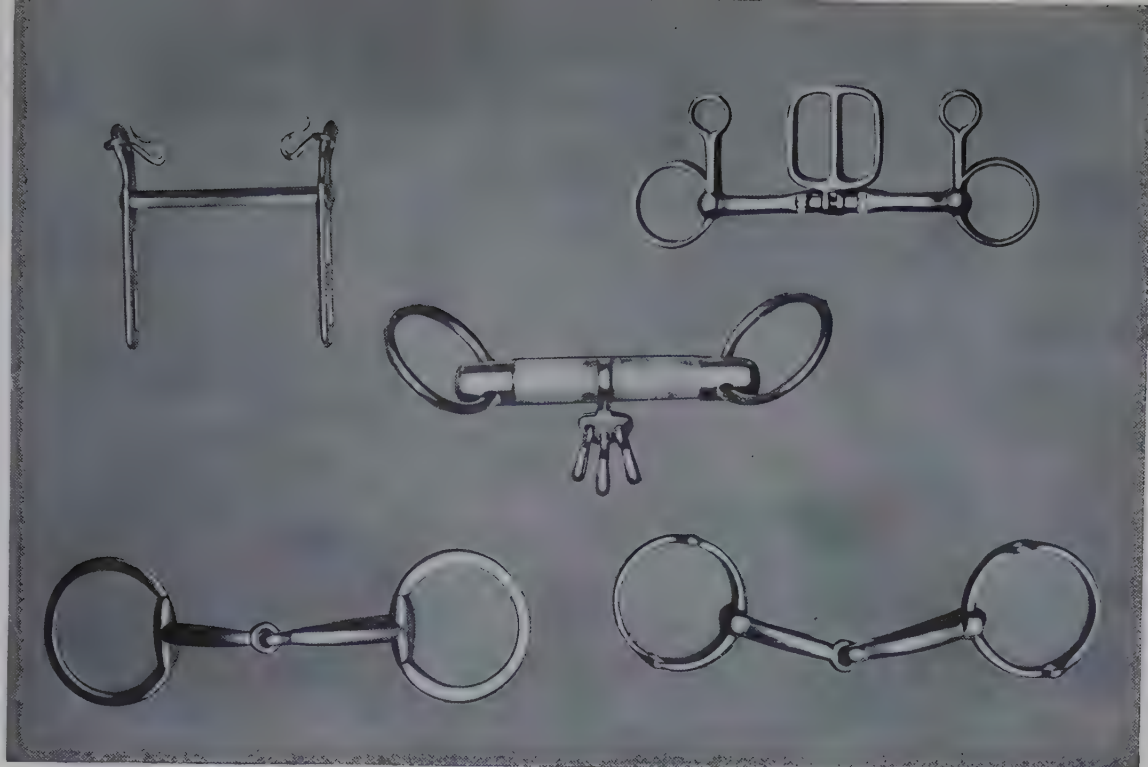
Certainly no inexperienced rider should attempt to ride with sharp spurs.

Bits. The appended illustrations show the various types of bits that are recommended, and although one may be undoubtedly more suitable than another to certain animals and is the so-called key to the horse's mouth, the master key in every case are sympathetic hands.

Mouthing-Bits. A mouthing-bit is required on a youngster to teach him to mouth himself, play with the bit, keeping his tongue underneath, and to salivate. It is most important that an animal should keep his mouth wet while playing with the bit, as a dry mouth is naturally insensitive. Young horses should frequently be allowed to feed with a snaffle in their mouths, as this will teach them to keep their tongues underneath and their mouths wet. Naturally, if an animal is pulled about and galloped all out before he is fit, his mouth will become dry and dead, and this should be avoided at all costs. Needless to say, any undue haste in

training with regard to making a horse's mouth, will inevitably result in failure. If an animal shows no tendency to froth, vaseline cream or salad oil smeared on the bit may induce salivation, and always when hacking a young horse, allow him occasionally to nibble at the grass with the bit in his mouth, as this will assist in keeping it wet. There are some horses that bridle in a snaffle (that is, bend at the poll and flex their jaws), but these are remarkably few. Personally I can only call to mind one really high-class polo pony that could be played in a snaffle. When training an animal in a double bridle, the bridoon may be used to maintain the head at the correct height and the bit at the right angle; for this purpose the reins may be held as illustrated in the accompanying photograph. (See Plate 16 opposite page 77.)

Balance as Affected by Head-Carriage. As many young animals, largely due to lack of condition, will ride with their weight on their forehands, it is simpler to carry out their early training with only a snaffle in their mouths. Its employment will be for the purpose of raising the head and accustoming the animal to move with its centre of gravity further back and thus riding light in hand. As long as he appears to ride heavy in front, no useful purpose can be served by placing the bit in his mouth. One must remember that many young animals persist in carrying their heads low from sheer weakness; obviously under these conditions any attempt instantly to raise and permanently maintain a lofty head-carriage is folly, and shows a lack of sympathetic understanding. With the improvement of the animal's condition in conjunction with careful handling, the head can gradually be lifted, while the hocks, by means of leg pressure, can be brought more underneath to support the



From Messrs Whippy & Stegall, London

Plate 56

BITS

TOP LEFT. A 9TH LANCER POLO BIT, MORE SEVERE THAN RUGBY PELHAM. TOP RIGHT. A SNAFFLE WITH GRID TO KEEP THE TONGUE UNDER THE BIT.
CENTRE. A MOUTHING BIT. BOTTOM LEFT. A PLAIN BIG RING SNAFFLE ACTION ON THE CORNERS OF THE MOUTH OR OUTSIDE THE BARS.
BOTTOM RIGHT. A GAG SNAFFLE. THE REINS RUNNING THROUGH THE HOLES IN THE RINGS ACT AS A PULLEY AND PREVENT A HORSE HANGING ON THE HANDS

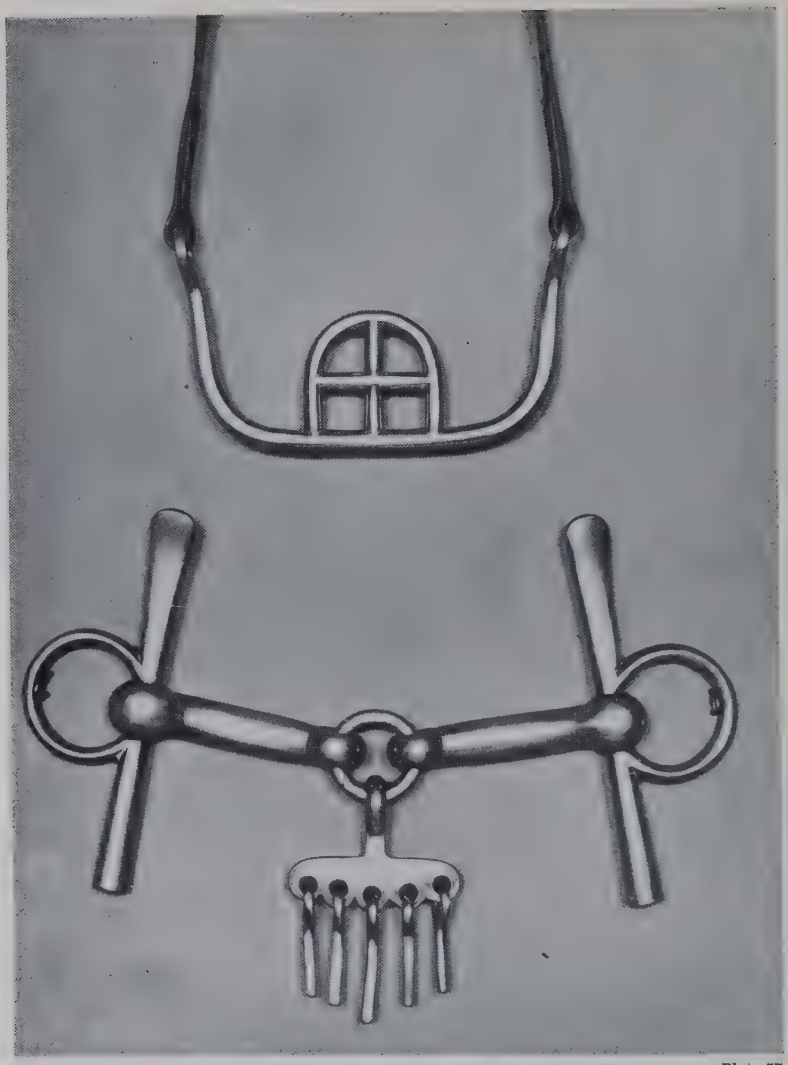


Plate 57

TOP. THE GRID IS PLACED IN THE MOUTH, THE BRANCHES JUST TOUCHING THE CORNERS SO THAT THE TONGUE IS KEPT UNDER THE GRID AND THE BIT.

BOTTOM. A MOUTHING SNAFFLE WITH KEYS, TO TEACH A YOUNG ANIMAL TO FROTH AND KEEP ITS TONGUE UNDER THE BIT.

weight thus conveyed back, owing to the higher carriage of the head.

A naturally well-balanced animal, and consequently light in front, can be bitted earlier than one with less perfect conformation. Occasionally one comes across a horse that is too light in front, by which it is understood that there is a tendency to have the weight thrown back too much on the hocks, which propel the animal upwards rather than directly forwards. Under these conditions, the above-mentioned use of the snaffle will only tend further to accentuate this displacement of balance, and probably something in the nature of a Rugby Pelham is more suitable in these circumstances.

When Bitting up a Youngster. It is always recommended to employ a mild bit in the first instance for several days without a curb-chain, and when the latter is first used it should be loose and may even have a leather guard.

A youngster should first be taught to appreciate the action of the bit without the rider's weight on his back. First take the bridoon-reins over the head, holding them in the left hand, lead the horse forward, at the same time retaining his head in the correct position with the aid of the bridoon.

The assistance of some one driving him forward from behind will facilitate the procedure.

As he moves forward, the curb-reins should be lightly felt by the right hand held under his chin. Immediately he bends and relaxes his jaw, all tension of the bit reins should be released and he should be rewarded. Repetition and reward will in due course make him understand what is required, when he feels the curb-rein, and after a few days further instruction can be given mounted.

A young horse must gradually be taught to bend at the poll and relax his jaw without lowering his head, and for this purpose the rider must hold him up to the bit by applying his legs.

Needless to say, one must not attempt to force this constrained position on a young animal for any length of time, and one must only expect very gradual progress. For the first few days one must be content with occasional response and immediately he gives his jaw, he should be allowed a free rein, by which means he will begin to learn that this relaxing means comfort.

Understanding the Action of the Bit. The rider himself must also have a thorough appreciation of the action of the curb-bit. When there is a bearing of the curb-chain on the chin-groove and the angle between the cheek-piece of the bit and the bars of the horse's mouth is 45 degrees, this indicates extreme severity; an angle of 60 degrees may be considered normal; an angle of 90 degrees mild, whilst a more obtuse angle than this indicates that the bit "follows through" and loses its lever action. (See Chapter II, page 57; and Chapter IV, page 75.) It must be realised that the bar of the curb-bit acts directly on the sensitive bars of the horse's mouth, and as the lower branches of the cheek-pieces are proportionately longer than the upper, so the severity of the bit is proportionately increased.

If the bit is too narrow it is liable to bruise the sides of the horse's mouth. If too wide, it may work to one side of the mouth and with a port-mouth bit will have an uneven bearing on the bars of the mouth. In addition to this the curb-chain will have an uneven pressure on the chin-groove. The result of this will be, not only discomfort, but also a wrong impression being conveyed to

the horse, who will naturally not respond in consequence.

Too high a port may bruise the roof of the mouth, and in any case, the tongue fitting into the port results in a stronger pressure being brought to bear on the bars, whereas in the case of a straight-bar bit some of this pressure will normally be taken on the tongue.

Evasion of Control from the Bit. There are many ways by which a horse will endeavour to evade control from the bit.

(a) By lowering the head into the chest, instead of keeping it correctly placed, bending from the poll and relaxing the jaw. Care must be taken instantly to notice this tendency in a young horse. Correction : The bridoon should be used to retain a reasonably high carriage of the head, then the bit felt gently with proportionate pressure of the legs to induce the animal to respond to the bit. If this habit should have developed in an older animal in all probability the best results will be obtained by putting him back for training in a plain snaffle for three weeks or a month before attempting to place his head with the double bridle as suggested. In confirmed cases one may have to resort to a gag and schooling with an overhead martingale.

(b) Poking the nose upwards :

This is not infrequently due to faulty conformation of the neck, and under these circumstances a standing martingale on the noseband may be necessary. But on the other hand it may be due to the fact that the animal has not been taught to understand the action of the bit, and the process explained earlier in this chapter must be employed. The point that must be especially observed, is to endeavour to make the animal realise that comfort is acquired by ready response to the bit.

When the martingale is used, either standing or running (the latter being attached to the curb-reins), the animal must be able to raise his nose to the level of his withers, before feeling the effect of the martingale. In confirmed cases, one may have to resort to the use of running-reins, but these are not recommended for jumping although they may be used for polo. Certainly many young horses will attempt to evade control from the bit in this way when first bitted, and there is no doubt that patience and good hands supply a more effectual remedy than reliance on force, in the shape of severe and long-cheeked bits. One must always endeavour to keep in mind the animal's point of view. As soon as he bridles correctly, he should be given freedom of his head, so that he may in time connect ready compliance with comfort.

(c) Refusing to face the bit :

This is only natural in the case of a youngster, as it is due to fear of the bit and resultant lack of impulsion. At any time it may, of course, be due to overbitting or too tight a curb-chain. In the case of the young horse, though ridden with a light hand, he must be driven well up to the bit with the leg. He will certainly improve when ridden in company with other horses. He should not be allowed to rein back nor be pulled up abruptly.

Tongue Over the Bit. (d) Getting the tongue over the bit :

This is undoubtedly the most common cause of pulling. It is generally due to hurried and careless training and is a difficult habit to correct. It will seldom occur if a youngster is carefully mouthed and not pushed on too fast in his education.

For this reason, a jointed bit, such as a snaffle, is preferable to a straight-bar bit when breaking a young horse. Directly the tendency is noticed steps

must be taken to prevent the habit developing. One should frequently let him feed with the snaffle in his mouth, but this is really more in the nature of a preventive than a cure.

If he persists in this habit, when ridden, one can try this form of correction first:

Tie a piece of tape to the joint of the snaffle, then knot the two long ends about half an inch to an inch above the joint, pass the two ends of the tape outside round the corners of the mouth and attach to the noseband. If this is not successful, place a small grid (see previous illustration) in the mouth. This will effectually prevent the tongue getting over the bit, though at first the horse may attempt to draw his tongue right back. In time he will probably give this up and the grid may be dispensed with. In extreme cases, and unfortunately necessary with some polo ponies, the tongue can be tied as follows : first put on the bridle, then with a double knot round the tongue and below the bit, tie a three-inch wide cotton bandage (folded over three times). This need not be tight, and the tongue should now be tied to the roof of the mouth by attaching the ends of the bandage to the noseband. On no account should the tongue be tied to the lower jaw as this will necessitate a very tight knot to prevent slipping, and consequently stop the circulation of blood.

One-sided Mouth. (e) One-sided mouth, due to the fact that the horse will only take the bit on one side of his mouth. This may arise from teeth trouble, possibly a projecting molar, in which case it is advisable to seek the advice of a good veterinary surgeon. It may be due to an injured bar, caused by rough hands or a severe bit. Rest and freedom from the bit are necessary and the injured part should be treated with a solution of boric acid.

It may be due to careless training, through being worked more on one side than the other. Left-sided mouths are the more common, due to animals being led, turned, bridled, and handled on the near side.

They should consequently be led and worked proportionately more on the off side than the near.

Lateral Flexions. They should also be taught the " lateral flexions " carried out as follows :

Place the animal's head correctly with the snaffle and make him walk forward on a straight line. Then feel the bit rein on the hard side of the mouth, at the same time pressing the horse forward with both legs and not allowing him to divert from a straight line. Immediately he relaxes his jaw and bends from the poll on that side, release the tension of the reins. On no account should he be allowed to turn till the hands are carried over to one side and the outer rein pressed against his neck. He should then turn away from the pressure of the rein. In due course he will relax his jaw equally freely on both sides and eventually have a level mouth. It may be of assistance when dealing with a stubborn case to lower the bit half an inch on the hard side of the mouth.

When teaching a horse to bridle either directly or laterally as just explained, one must never keep a prolonged tension on the reins. Frequently, but only for a few strides, should each attempt be made, simultaneously using the legs to maintain impulsion. At first be satisfied with the merest indication of the so-called flexions and ease the reins, gradually, but very gradually, asking more of the horse until he eventually answers the bit instantly of his own free will.

CHAPTER XIII

RIDING-SCHOOL TRAINING

ALTHOUGH termed riding-school training, this part of a horse's education can be carried out equally well in a field or even along a road. For preference it should be a quiet place so that nothing untoward can distract his attention.

Practical horsemanship, at any rate, entails some knowledge of riding school work, which merely implies the use of the hands and legs to control the horse. The rider's legs promote impulsion, whereas the hands control and guide, both being used in conjunction with the voice when training a young horse. The amount of leg pressure and feeling on the reins will depend upon the sensitiveness of each individual animal.

Direct Impulsion. To make him walk forward, close the legs behind the girths, ease the reins and say "walk." A tap with the whip may be necessary in the case of a sluggish animal. This is known as direct impulsion, and as a result straightforward movement is obtained. The horse should be taught to walk out freely at four miles an hour. More vigorous application of the legs is the aid or signal for him to increase his pace either to a trot, canter or gallop.

When desirous of checking the pace feel his mouth through the medium of the bit, and he will check or stop according to the degree of feeling

thus produced and when accompanied by the word "whoa."

Reining Back. We can make a horse rein back, which is the opposite to direct impulsion, by a feeling of the reins and simultaneous pressure of the legs. The actual procedure is as follows: the rider's legs press him up to the bit, but as the hands do not yield the animal reins back from the bit. He can now be halted by a stronger pressure of the legs and relaxation of the feeling on the reins, using the voice as before when halting. He can in the same way be pressed forward from reining back into a walk, trot or canter by relaxing the feeling of the reins and varying the degree of leg pressure as required. A horse should not be trained to rein back until he walks forward freely.

If it is desired to rein back to the right rear, there must be a stronger feeling of the left rein and the left leg pressed against the horse's flank to guide his hind quarters. The rider should lean his own weight slightly forward when reining back. If a horse resists the normal aids, he may first be taught to rein back dismounted, pressing him back step by step with the bit, encouraging him with the voice and, if necessary, gently tapping with the whip the foreleg that should move. When mounted he must not be allowed to continue to rein back regardless of the rider's leg pressure. If this is permitted the horse will be behind his bit, refusing to face it and generally trying to evade its control.

Turns. Simple turns are made to either hand by increasing the feeling of the rein in the direction of the turn, keeping contact with the mouth on the opposite side with the rein pressed against the neck. At the same time, to prevent any tendency of his hind quarters flying out in the opposite direction to

Plates 58 & 59

THE PASSAGE AT THE TROT

TO THE RIGHT TO THE LEFT

NOTE THE HEAD IS BENT FROM THE POLL IN THE DIRECTION OF MOVEMENT.

Plates 60 & 61

CHANGING THE LEADING LEG AT THE CANTER FROM OFF-FORE LEADING TO NEAR-FORE LEADING

THE RIDER APPLYING HIS RIGHT LEG AS THE OFF-FORE, THE HORSE'S LEADING LEG, COMES TO THE GROUND.

THE HORSE HAS CHANGED BEHIND, THE OFF-HIND NOW COMING DOWN FIRST.

Plate 62

CHANGING LEADING LEG AT THE CANTER COMPLETED

THE OFF-HIND PROPELS THE HORSE FORWARD ON TO THE RIGHT DIAGONAL AND FINALLY HE LEADS WITH THE NEAR-FORE. THUS THE CYCLE OF MOTION IS CHANGED.

Plate 63

"RUFUS," AN INTERNATIONAL POLO PONY

THE PICTURE SHOWS THE FREEDOM OF REIN, THE EXTENSION OF HEAD AND FORE-LEG AT THE GALLOP AND THE PONY'S BALANCE UNDER THESE CONDITIONS. THE PERFECT PONY MUST RIDE WITH A LOOSE REIN, MANŒUVRING WITH THE MINIMUM EFFORT FOR HIMSELF AND HIS RIDER. NOTE THE FACT THAT A PLUMMET LINE DROPPED FROM THE NOSE COMES IN CONTACT WITH THE LIMIT OF EXTENSION OF THE FORE-LEG. IF THE HEAD IS RAISED AND BENT AT THE POLL, BY MEANS OF THE BIT, THE ACTION OF THE FORE-LEGS IS CONTRACTED OWING TO THE CONSTRICTION OF THE MUSCLES RUNNING FROM THE TOP OF THE NECK TO THE SHOULDERS. THIS PONY HAS IDEAL PASTERNS, BUT NOTE THE SLOPE OF THAT OF THE NEAR FORE. THIS ELASTICITY HAS MUCH TO DO WITH THE SMOOTHNESS OF ACTION AT THE GALLOP.

the turn, the rider's leg should be pressed against this flank.

Lateral Impulsion. Lateral impulsion is the effect of extreme pressure on one side which makes the hind quarters or entire body move in the opposite direction. The simplest method is to teach the horse, when standing still, to move his quarters to one side by pressure of the leg on the opposite flank. This instructs him in the first indication of the lateral aids, and throughout the training it must be realised that leg pressure controls the hind quarters and the hands the forehand, the combination of both controlling the whole.

The first lesson in lateral control of the entire frame should be the half-passage. This is the diagonal movement to either hand, the horse moving forward and to a flank by half crossing his legs, and is induced by the following means:

Collecting a Horse. First hold him together by the hands and legs, the legs being applied to keep him up to the bit, thus not losing impulsion by restraint from the latter. This is commonly called collecting the horse and may be employed to make him halt collectedly or walk, trot, and canter in a collected manner. A horse is said to be collected when his head is raised and bent at the poll, the jaw relaxed and the hocks brought well under him, so that he has the maximum control of his limbs, and is in a position to respond instantly to the least indication of his rider. By this means you prevent the full extension of his fore limbs on the move and the natural inclination to carry his centre of gravity forward by stretching out his head and neck from the shoulders. The hind legs, by being kept well forward, will now bear a large proportion of the weight that would normally be carried on the fore limbs. An animal thus collected is also

under the maximum control of the rider and is ready to move off at any pace, and turn or stop immediately the desired aids are applied.

Half-Passage. Having thus collected him at a walk, with the intention of half-passaging to the right, we now bend the head slightly to the right by feeling the rein on this side and close the left leg strongly to make him half cross his legs. Sufficient pressure of the right leg must be maintained to keep him moving forward, though actually in a diagonal direction ; the left rein is used to regulate the direction of the forehand, either pressing it against the neck to assist in making him move right-handed or, when necessary, feeling that side of his mouth to prevent him turning to the right.

To check the movement and bring the horse to the halt, close the right leg and feel both reins. Reverse the aids in order to half-passage to the left and merely increase the impulsion as already explained to carry it out at the trot.

Full Passage. The full passage can be executed in the same way with this difference, that the movement is direct to a flank with the forehand slightly in advance of the hind quarters ; consequently the aids must be more accentuated than in the case of the half-passage.

When training a polo pony or charger both the above should be finally executed at the canter.

Turns on the Haunches. Having once obtained obedience to the leg in this way, there is no difficulty in teaching a horse to turn on the haunches.

For example, we wish to turn right-handed, pivoting on the hind legs—lead the forehand round with the right rein, keeping the head bent slightly to the right ; the rider should lean his body back and slightly inclined inwards, at the same

time pressing the left rein against the neck and keeping contact with the mouth. Only retain sufficient pressure with the right leg to keep the horse up to his bit, but apply the left leg strongly to prevent the hind quarters from flying out, with the result that the horse pivots the forehand round the hind quarters. One should be content with a quarter of a turn at first. When this is performed satisfactorily, the degree of the turn may be gradually increased, until the horse can turn completely about to either hand and eventually circle the forehand round the hind quarters.

Halting. When halting at all paces the rider should close his legs and lean his body back as he feels the reins ; this will ensure the horse pulling up collectedly with his weight back on his hocks, instead of hanging on the hands with his weight thrown forward on the fore limbs.

True Canter. One of the most important items of the school training is to make a horse strike off at the canter with the required leg leading. When turning to the right at the canter or gallop he should lead with the off fore, and to the left with the near fore, with his other legs conforming. A horse is said to be disunited when he is leading with one particular foreleg, but not correctly followed by the hind leg on the same side.

No animal can be described as properly trained if it cannot be made to strike off with the required leg leading at the canter, and the following are the simplest methods for attaining this :

1. Canter with the off-fore leading :

   Press the horse up to its bridle with both legs to a collected trot, bend the head slightly to the left with a stronger feeling of the left rein, close both legs firmly with an increased

pressure of the left leg to create impulsion to a canter.[1]

By bending the head to the left, the freedom of the near foreleg is contracted, causing a natural tendency on the part of the horse to lead with the off-fore. The pressure of the rider's legs increases impulsion and his left leg supplying the stronger pressure indicates that the near hind must be brought down first to give primary impulsion, and at the same time the rider's right leg prevents the hind quarters swinging out to the right.

2. The second method is as follows :

Starting again from a collected trot, carry the hand over the withers to the left, and, with an increased feeling of the right rein, slightly bend the horse's head to the right, close both legs, the left leg the stronger, pressing the horse up from a trot to a canter.

This is actually the aid for the half-passage to the right, and when urged from a trot to a canter the horse will lead with the off-fore.

To lead with the near-fore the aids given are merely reversed. When the horse breaks freely from the trot to a canter he may be taught in the same way to do this from a halt and later direct from reining back.

The Change of the Leading Leg. To change from one leading leg to the other at the canter, check the horse to a trot and apply either of the above aids, gradually reducing the number of paces at the trot till the horse eventually will change the leading leg directly at the canter.

[1] For analysis of the horse's paces see *Horse-Sense and Horsemanship* (Messrs. Constable).

On no account should the rider attempt to make an animal change by throwing his weight forward on the side of the leg with which he wishes to lead. This will merely result in a change of the forelegs and not the hind. He should lean his weight back and slightly to the left if attempting to lead with the off-fore and vice versa.

The change should always be made first with the hind limbs, which really start the cycle of movement and give primary propulsion. The psychological moment to apply the aid to change direct at the canter from the near to the off-fore, is when the near-fore or leading leg is just coming in contact with the ground and vice versa.

There is a common tendency among some horsemen to overdo the school training, and it is largely due to this fact that for some time it failed to find universal favour in this country. One frequently came across animals that were "over-nagged," they were fidgety, overbent in many cases, and lacked the first essential for riding horses, namely, smoothness and flexibility at all paces.

Result of Over-hasty Training. This condition is generally due to over-hasty training and too vigorous use of the hands and legs, whereas patience, a sympathetic understanding of the horse and great care not to overtax his physical and mental abilities are the safeguards to prevent these ill-effects. Unlike machines controlled by levers and steered by a wheel, each animal must be treated in accordance with its peculiar temperament, conformation, and condition.

The Object of School Training. The real object of school training is to make the horse obedient to the rider's hands and legs, at the same time teaching him to support his weight so that it is, as far as possible, equally distributed on all four legs, and

when necessary brought further back and proportionately supported on the hind limbs. The greater part of this training is work done at collected paces, and to avoid cramping an animal's action he must be allowed periodically to walk and trot out, when his centre of gravity will necessarily be more forward than at the above paces.

One very definite rule must be observed, this being : that when a horse is not doing his school work smoothly it is a sure sign that he is being pushed on too rapidly.

Haute école demonstrates extreme gymnastic training of the horse. Some people are under the impression that its adoption would improve the standard of our polo ponies. But those who have made a study of the subject and have also been fortunate enough to have trained any really first-class ponies realise the fallacy of this.

All *haute école* movements are executed with a "fixed profile"; and unquestionably it will produce a hack that is permanently light in front.

But in the case of a polo pony we require a special flexibility—that is an animal that can vary the position of its centre of gravity, at one moment forward when fully extended with head outstretched and the next stopping on its hocks with head raised and centre of gravity back.

It should be realised that the muscle which actuates the free forward movement of the shoulder commences at the poll and runs down the neck. The raising of the head in conjunction with extreme curvature of the neck contracts this muscle and consequently produces lofty action of the forelegs as opposed to full extension of the limbs.

It is for the above reasons that we have retained the essentials of school training and eradicated those that tend to cramp an animal's extended

action. Even now, in the hands of an inexperienced trainer, there is a risk of this, if he concentrates too much on collected school work.

Two obvious examples of the effect of head-carriage on a horse's action, are the Hackney trotter, with high head-carriage and extreme bend of the neck resulting in high knee action, and the American pacer, with head outstretched, resulting in low trotting action.

CHAPTER XIV

SCHOOLING OVER FENCES

MOST horses that possess a right conformation will become good fencers provided that their education is judiciously carried out, and although good horsemanship is necessary, a rider of even limited experience can produce excellent results if he works on sound lines. Throughout the training he must keep this one fact uppermost in his mind ; namely, that the average horse will take naturally to jumping, as long as it is in no way associated in his brain with pain or fear. These two factors are solely responsible for making an animal refuse, or rush at his fences, and consequently jump wildly.

First Lessons Without Weight on the Horse's Back. In the case of a horse that has never been schooled over fences, it is advisable to give him his first lessons without a man on his back. In the first place he should be taught to lead freely, and this is easily accomplished if the trainer occasionally gives him a bit of sugar or carrot when he follows kindly. He can then be led over the smallest possible obstacles with a cavesson rein attached to the noseband. A pole on the ground is all that is required at first, and if the trainer walks over this himself, his pupil will readily follow. A shallow ditch or bank may be negotiated in the same way.

When he shows no hesitation in following, the pole may be raised inch by inch, and every time it

Plate 64

JUMPING FREE IN THE CIRCULAR MANÈGE

THE HORSE SHOULD BE TAUGHT TO GO ROUND TO EITHER HAND BEFORE INTRODUCING ANYTHING BUT THE SMALLEST FENCE. REMEMBER TO REWARD HIM AFTER HIS EFFORTS.

Plate 65

A GUARD RAIL OR DITCH ON THE NEAR SIDE

THIS WILL ACCUSTOM A HORSE TO STAND BACK FROM HIS FENCES. NOTE THE FINAL PROPULSION FROM THE TOES AND THE HOCKS STRAIGHTENED

is raised the pupil should be rewarded. A high-spirited young horse may play up after he has jumped, in which case it may be necessary to attach the cavesson rein to the snaffle.

A week or ten days may be spent in schooling in this way, by which time the horse will have learnt to " leave the ground " without hesitation or excitement. He also will have learnt to jump from the walk and trot, using his hocks to propel himself, and not relying on momentum from speed.

Further lessons may now be given in a free lane or oblong *manège*.

Whichever method is employed, the horse must be first of all taught to go down the lane or round the *manège* without encountering any fences except possibly a small ditch. When using the oblong or circular *manège*, the trainer should stand in the middle with a long whip. With the aid of this and his voice he will first teach the horse to walk, trot and canter as required to either hand. Obedience is very necessary, and any attempt to whip round or not move on the required circle must be instantly checked.

After two or three days' instruction as above, first one and then a second small jump may be introduced. By degrees large obstacles at various distances from one another can be negotiated, but these should all be solid and only made higher as the horse progresses.

Confidence Essential. Confidence is vitally essential. At the same time one must never continue to keep a horse jumping till he gets bored and stale. If a horse falls it is as well to lower the fence and make him jump it again, provided he has not hurt himself, as this will obviate the likelihood of his losing his nerve, and possibly next day when he comes to be schooled, refusing the same fence.

For this reason it is essential that the horse should not be made to jump continuously over the same fence, as it tires him unnecessarily, making him inattentive and apt to fall from sheer fatigue. From six to twelve jumps in a lesson is an approximate guide, though this must be largely influenced by his condition and natural aptitude.

If he is inclined to get too close to his fences, a guard-rail between two and three feet away, or a small ditch of similar dimensions, will correct this fault.

Frequent Reward the Key to Success. Reward in the shape of sugar or carrots, and slow but definite progress is the real medium to success.

Avoid the Possibility of Jar on Landing. It is important that a youngster should not jar himself on landing nor slip on taking off, and to prevent this, ashes may be strewn on the near and litter on the far side of each fence, when the ground is hard.

Sometimes an old horse can be used as a schoolmaster to give a novice a lead, provided neither is liable to kick, but this is not necessary if the fences are small at the commencement and only heightened by degrees, and when it is obvious that the horse is jumping with complete confidence.

After three weeks to a month of progressive free schooling, most horses will have acquired a fair standard of proficiency and may then continue their training mounted.

They will have learnt not to chance their fences, having been schooled entirely over solid obstacles, and if these have been varied as much as possible they are unlikely to refuse a strange-looking fence later on. It is as well, during the latter stages of free jumping, to fill in the ditches with brambles and place a fence on the far side, as this will teach

them to take off clear of a blind place—a very common source of trouble to young hunters.

Mounted Schooling. When schooling mounted, it is advisable to recommence over small fences. It will save time in the long run, as it is then certain that the horse will jump when mounted with the same confidence that he exhibited when being schooled free.

It also has this advantage, that by only attempting very small fences at the start, and by very gradually increasing their size, wings can be dispensed with. The result of this is that the horse will jump over the fence at which he is presented and not attempt to swerve or run out. Later we will realise the advantage of this out hunting, when we will find that he jumps exactly where his rider wishes, instead of swerving towards a gap and possibly colliding with another horseman. An animal that is uncontrollable in this way is a source of danger to his owner and others out hunting, and once the habit is confirmed, it is difficult to prevent, even in the hands of a strong rider.

Preliminary Schooling in a Snaffle. Although the horse may have been broken to a double bridle, it is advisable to start schooling him in a snaffle, as this will, to a great extent, eliminate any chance of injuring the mouth, owing to a possible misunderstanding between the rider and his mount. As the horse must stretch his head and neck when jumping, any restraint in this quarter through the medium of the bit must inevitably react on his performances.

The Advantages of Learning to Jump from a Slow Pace. It is most important to teach a youngster to jump from a slow pace at the start, both at a walk and a trot, over very small obstacles. In the first place he will not get excited, which he certainly would if he commenced his schooling at a fast pace;

secondly, he will have ample time to look at the obstacle and judge where to take off, and finally, he will learn to jump off his hocks and arch his back over his fences.

If a horse appears to be naturally a sticky fencer, he may be encouraged to jump more freely by the rider driving him on at an increased pace, but in all cases it is advisable to start schooling at slow paces. Jumping in company with a free fencer will generally remedy this defect in a youngster.

With this class of horse, it is most important not to interfere with his mouth when actually jumping. Not a few young horses are loth to extend themselves freely, merely because they have not been allowed sufficient freedom of rein, and if they have light mouths, rather than reach for their rein they will jump awkwardly, often landing on all fours, instead of spreading themselves over their fences.

A Horse that Rushes his Fences. The case of a young horse that rushes his fences is an entirely different problem, but if our training has been conducted on the right lines this should not occur. This particular trait is due to a nervous temperament and probably hasty and rough-and-ready methods, when extreme patience and quietness were essential. Though we require an animal that will jump freely and boldly, the effort must be made without flurry or excitement.

Undoubtedly a horse that has been raced will rush at his fences, unless he has been trained by an expert, who has taught him to jump slowly or fast as required. But apart from this, when a youngster shows such tendencies, it indicates the fact that he is nervous of jumping, probably having no confidence in his power to propel himself over a fence without considerable momentum, and consequently is anxious to get through the ordeal as quickly as

possible. A horse is incapable of controlling his nerves like a man, a fact which is not generally appreciated. But when we realise this, we can understand how extremely important it is that our training should impose the least possible nervous strain on our pupil.

Avoidance of Noise and Flurry. A show of whips and a chorus of shouts may do little harm to a sluggish, phlegmatic type of animal, but in nine cases out of ten the results will be decidedly detrimental.

Patience Essential. Patience and quiet handling are both very necessary, and every endeavour must be made to ensure the horse's confidence. If he exhibits this inclination to rush when jumping free in a straight line, his further education on these lines should be discontinued and it is advisable to proceed with his training mounted.

Concentrate on impressing him with the fact that there is nothing to fear, neither from the whip, the bit, nor the actual fence.

Let him now walk to and fro over a pole on the ground ; let him stand in front of a small fence, walk up to it and look over it without jumping. When he stands still in this position reward him. When he is quite resigned and settled down, let him jump at a walk and then at a trot. His training must be continued on these lines and the fences be kept to quite small dimensions (18 ins. high), until he shows definite signs of overcoming his nervousness. It may take as long as a month, with some horses, but patience is the only key to success.

Eventually he may be allowed to jump at a canter, but to prevent any tendency to " hot up," his run at the fence should be limited to two or three lengths. Gradually as he improves at this pace, he may be given a longer run, and if he still shows an inclination to rush, he should be made to

canter round in a circle past the fence, turning him away when he thinks he is going to be ridden over it, then, when he least expects it, pop him over it and continue in the same way.

A series of small fences from one to three feet high and seven yards apart will not only steady a horse but also make him active, as he must use his hocks and keep alternating his balance so as to land and again to jump.

It will frequently be found that horses throw up their heads, either when being steadied on approaching a fence or when actually jumping. This may be due to bad conformation (a ewe neck) or to bad previous training and heavy hands.

Martingales. In such cases a standing martingale attached to the nose-band may be used, but it must be sufficiently long to enable the horse to carry his nose level with his withers. A running martingale on the reins serves the same purpose to a modified degree. It has the advantage of allowing more play to the head and neck, which may be necessary in emergencies, when a horse that has made a mistake, may succeed in keeping on his legs if he has full freedom of his head.

But although the running martingale assists the rider in controlling his horse, it will not prove as a corrective to an animal that has definitely acquired the habit of throwing up his head when he jumps, which the standing martingale will do.

When approaching a fence, the horse must be allowed to lower his head in order to judge where he should take off, and only when his head is so placed can he bring into play the loin muscles required for jumping.

Encouraging a Horse to Extend his Head. He must be encouraged to do this, by the rider offering him enough rein to extend his head, and by relieving

the weight from the back portion of the saddle by leaning forward and supporting it on his knees, thighs, and stirrups.

If the horse still refrains from lowering his head, it will be necessary to resort to the martingale as already explained.

Refusals. Undoubtedly the rider will have to deal with animals that refuse, though this will be exceptional if the training is on the progressive lines described.

In dealing with refusers, we must first endeavour to discover their reasons for refusing. There is no doubt that this, in nearly every case, originates from nervousness, and it is probable that in an evil-dispositioned horse it will sooner or later develop into stubbornness. Such animals are generally described as being "nappy." In extreme cases they will even refuse to trot down a road away from from their stables.[1] It is not improbable under these circumstances that the fault may be due to overfeeding, lack of exercise and being in charge of a nervous rider.

If a horse of this character is allowed his own way on one or more occasions, he will quickly appreciate that he has scored a win and will realise the possibility of similar successes in the future. Severe measures must be taken, and it will be advisable to reduce the corn ration to 4 lbs. a day, though as much hay as he can eat may be given ; daily exercise should be increased to a full three hours, and finally, putting him in the hands of a strong and quiet horseman is the only sure remedy.

Causes of Refusing. But before we can classify a horse as being nappy, we must assure ourselves that his behaviour is not due to pain or fear. Horses generally refuse from one or other of the above

[1] For treatment of nappy horses, see Chapter XV.

reasons, possibly from both. Pain may be due to jar from landing on hard ground. He may be slightly lame from a corn or a splint forming. He may have had his mouth injured, and even though his rider has light hands he will dread the possibility of the bit causing him further pain. He may be overbitted and refuse to jump under these conditions, i.e. dreads the severity of the bit.

He may have slipped and lost his nerve, or a fence may be larger than his standard of training dictates, and he has not sufficient confidence yet to make the attempt. He may be physically tired and incapable of the necessary effort. Finally, it may be due to nervousness on the part of the rider, a state of affairs which is instantly imparted to his mount.

The remedy is obvious, once one appreciates the true reason for the refusal.

If it is due to pain, one must discontinue training until this is relieved, and remember that the horse may still be nervous when he resumes his lessons.

If it is due to fear, we must regain the horse's confidence, when possible employing another horse to give him a lead, only jumping small fences and thus gradually bringing him on again.

If a horse refuses, and one has every reason to believe that he is fit and capable of jumping the obstacle, firm, but not necessarily harsh measures must be resorted to. Emphasis must be laid on this latter point as it is most important to bear in mind that the horse must on no account be made to dislike jumping.

If an animal refuses to the left, which is the direction in which he is most likely to swerve, always turn him round right-handed (or vice versa) and present him again at the fence. Ten to fifteen yards is an ample run, and the legs must be vigorously

Plates 66, 67 & 68

ON AND OFF A BANK

NOTE THE EFFORT FROM THE LOINS DOWN TO THE HIND-FETLOCKS.

THE STRAIN ON EACH FORE-LEG IN TURN.

THE HORSE HAVING CHANGED ON TO HIS HIND LEGS HAS SPRUNG OFF THE BANK AND IS LANDING OVER THE DITCH.

THE LIGHTEST TENSION SHOULD BE MAINTAINED ON THE MOUTH WHEN SCHOOLING A YOUNGSTER.

Plates 69 & 70

THE HIGHER EDUCATION OF A HUNTER

JUMPING RAILS IN A STREAM.

WALKING UP STEPS FROM THE RIVER.

THE MORE VARIED THE SCHOOLING THE GREATER THE CONFIDENCE OF MAN AND HORSE IN A HUNT.

applied to prevent him stopping. The rider must be quick to anticipate the first indication of a swerve to either hand and counteract it with the rein and the whip applied to the shoulder. For this reason it will be necessary to ride with the whip in the left hand when dealing with a horse that refuses to that side. If the horse stops dead, it is as well to rein him back slowly step by step, at the same time holding him well up to the bit with the legs, and then again present him straight at the fence. Rather than be defeated by an obstinate horse, it is best to pull him over the obstacle with a rope attached to the nose-band, and when possible, it is advisable to take advantage of a lead by another horse. Generally speaking, a horse only merits punishment when he shows determined resistance to the aids or indications of the rider, which he obviously knows.

However, before we can attempt to school a young horse mounted over fences, we must be absolutely certain of our own balance and hands. In fact the rider must be able to assist his mount in addition to controlling him.

Effect of Rider's Weight and Hands on a Horse. It is often noticeable how well young horses will jump when free, but once mounted, the combined exhibition is frequently disappointing. Undoubtedly the extra weight on their backs is an encumbrance, but it need not necessarily be an embarrassment. We can reduce the effect of encumbrance by ensuring that our weight is kept constant, as far as possible, over the horse's centre of gravity. We can eliminate the embarrassment by giving him his head when required.

In other words, the rider's seat and hands are the governing factors, and if these are respectively in balance and sympathy with the horse, the condi-

tions under which he jumps when mounted will approximate, as nearly as possible, to those when he is being schooled free. The problem is, how can this best be attained ?

I. In the first place the reins should be held in both hands, which should be kept low and well separated. Now, when presenting the horse at a fence, no matter at what pace, we must on no account endeavour to steady him when once within two lengths of the fence ; the reason being that the horse must be able to lower his head for the purpose already stated. Any necessity to steady him should have been considered and acted on before this.

II. If, as is probable, the horse shows a tendency to hesitate, he should be driven on with the rider's legs. In the case of a sluggish or sticky horse the legs should be applied with the utmost vigour.

III. The rider, with a rein in each hand, should drive his horse and look at the place he intends actually to jump. If his hands, on approaching the fence, are drawn in close to his waist, he can keep contact and control, and yet be in a position to give any extra rein required.

IV. When two or three lengths from the fence, he should grip with the knees, without keeping them stiff, so that he may use his legs as required, at the same time imposing the greater part of his weight on his knees and thighs and supported by the stirrups, i.e. the weight poised over the horse's centre of gravity.

V. From this position he should lean forward as the horse rises, thus taking his weight off the back of the saddle. This will now enable him to go with his mount as he jumps. If he were not in the required position at the psychological moment his horse would "jump away from him," his weight would be wrongly disposed to assist his mount's

efforts and he would certainly interfere with his mouth—i.e. the embarrassments that were not encountered when jumping free.

VI. Should the horse have taken off prematurely or jumped awkwardly, provided the rider is just clear of the seat of the saddle, he will not be unseated, as he has already anticipated the possibility of this.

VII. As the horse lands he will require more rein, especially if he has spread himself over a wide place. If the rider has not been thrown back (jumped away from), but has retained his seat as described with his hands drawn in towards his waist, he will have no difficulty in giving his mount the necessary liberty.

VIII. If he is sitting back over a big drop, or when riding an animal that is likely to refuse fast at a fence, he must be prepared to let the reins slip through his fingers as the horse stretches his neck on landing.

Points to Remember. To recapitulate the various points with regard to schooling young horses :

A. Be patient and content with slow progress, never jumping a big fence if a horse still shows nervousness at a small one, thus giving him confidence.

B. Sticky jumpers must be driven well up with the leg, whereas flippant fencers must be ridden quietly.

C. Concentrate on your own seat and hands being employed to assist the horse. Interference with the mouth will spoil a promising youngster.

D. Suppleness of the body and arms to "go with" the horse and suppleness of the knees, both to support one's own balance and to ensure freedom of the lower part of the leg to obtain impulsion, are essential.

E. It is hardly necessary to say that the horse should be regularly rewarded to encourage him and to make him like jumping.

F. Avoid all noise and flurry, especially in the case of a nervous animal. He should jump a fence with no more concern than if he were trotting down a road.

G. Make up your own mind that you are both going to jump. Any hesitancy on your part will instantly react on him. When both horse and rider have confidence in each other and enjoy their schooling, they will mutually inspire each other with excellent results.

CHAPTER XV

DIFFICULT HORSES

FEW horses are perfect, and most have some peculiarity or trait, though these may not necessarily be due to vice. The problem to be solved is how best to deal with each individual case. If we can successfully discover the cause we are in a position to find the remedy for the majority of animals.

Stumbling. This may be due to many causes. Weakness in a young horse, especially when he is first shod, may frequently account for it. This will generally improve with condition and careful riding, and a weak or lazy horse, when exercised, should be ridden well up to his bridle. It is probable that he rides with too much weight on his forehand. One must endeavour to make him carry his head higher; the process can only be gradual and will be effected by riding him for short periods with the head raised by the bridoon-reins. The result of this is to bring back the horse's weight, which must now be borne on the hind limbs. These must be brought well forward under his centre of gravity by the application of the rider's legs and thus will be in a position to support the extra weight thrown back from the forehand on to the haunches.

Needless to say, an animal with upright pasterns and bad shoulders is more liable to stumble than one of truer conformation. Similarly a horse that

goes too close in his front action and knocks himself will be apt to stumble.

Carelessness in shoeing is a very common cause. Though a horse may not have worn his shoes out within a month, his feet will have grown and will require shortening at the toes. If these are allowed to grow too long, not only will the unfortunate animal stumble, but will also be forced to impose undue strain on the back tendons of the legs. In many cases a stumbler will be improved by being shod with a rolled-toed shoe. (Page 128, Plates 27 and 28.)

Stumbling is also caused through lack of proper care of the feet in the stable. If they are not regularly picked out and kept clean, thrush may easily develop and cause a stumbling action. This is easily detected by an unhealthy and evil-smelling condition of the frog.

Corns, possibly in both feet, will not make a horse trot unevenly, but he is actually lame on both legs, loses his action and stumbles. This is due to the inner heel of the shoe pressing on the seat of the corn, which should be cut out and the horse shod with a three-quarter shoe.

Shying. Generally speaking there are three forms of shying. The first from genuine fear and the second from freshness, while the third is the case of an old horse who shies with the deliberate intention of unseating his rider, which is almost akin to vice.

Horses that shy at a bird or a piece of paper in a country lane will often take no notice of the many sights and sounds in crowded traffic. This is the outcome of a rather tiresome light-heartedness due to lack of exercise, which is the origin of most horses shying and the cure is obvious.

A young horse should be shown life and not have his daily routine confined to exercise in a quiet

field and at other times shut up in a box. Boxes that look out on to a stable-yard, where the animals can see what is going on, have this advantage, that one will generally find the inmates less disconcerted by any strange sights that they may encounter in the course of the day.

Now taking the first case, that of genuine fear. It is most important to accustom the horse to strange objects, and very often by allowing an older animal to proceed first past the special object of dread, its more timid companion will eventually show equal confidence.

In this case and at all others, the rider must remain very quiet and not show that he anticipates any likelihood of his mount shying, which would more than probably convey to the latter the impression that he himself is frightened. Some bad horsemen will actually induce a horse to shy by starting to pull him about and shouting on approaching some object, such as a steam-roller, really putting the idea into the animal's head that this is some dangerous monster that may do him harm. Let us pursue further the problem of passing a steam-roller on a nervous horse. In the first place, endeavour to ride past as though there was nothing out of the way on the road. If he shows reluctance at passing, urge him on without using the whip, and if necessary coax him with the voice.

It is possible that on one side of the road there is a steam-roller and on the other a ditch, and if the animal's head is turned towards the roller he may, unawares to himself and his rider, shy into the ditch. It is advisable in these circumstances, on riding him past, to turn his head towards the ditch, which will prevent a possible calamity and divert his attention from the object he was dreading. In extreme cases, it may be necessary to lead the horse

past, but if possible, one should avoid doing this, as it tends to attach too much importance to the whole affair. Once past, make much of him and talk to him. Nothing will make more certain of his continuing to shy at strange objects than losing your temper with him. It will merely confirm his fear and make him doubly nervous on future occasions.

Horses seldom shy at motors these days unless passing at extreme speed, and one must remember that, when mounted, one has the right to hold up a car approaching one on the road. Here again the advantage of an old and steady horse, on the side next to the car, is the best means of giving confidence to a timid animal. But this all points to the great advantage of allowing animals at exercise to see life and gain experience, when they will take little notice of any unaccustomed sight or sound. To give an example: just previous to embarking for France at the commencement of the late war, our remounts were all tested by a *feu de joie*. A certain number of them played up, but by far the worst offender was my own charger. However, after the first few days of hard campaigning he was quite unperturbed by the sound of shot or shell, and this was general throughout all horses in the Army.

The deduction we may draw from this is, that ample work together with familiarity with strange incidents is the best remedy under all circumstances. One cannot expect a horse not to shy at some unexpected occurrence—as, for instance, a partridge rising from under his feet with a whirr of wings. One is startled oneself and no blame must be attached to one's horse for his instinctive movement of fear.

Now to deal with the second case—shying due to freshness and high spirits—which is the natural

outcome of equine *joie de vivre* at his release from the confinement of the stable, when he first comes out in the open. This may be treated in a playful manner; a smack on the neck and a cheery rebuke will soon put the horse and his rider on good terms with each other. But at the same time, if this tendency to shy is persistent and really becomes a nuisance, it is an indication that the animal is not getting sufficient exercise, and possibly too much corn, in which case the remedy is obvious.

Now let us take the last case, that of the old horse who shies with the deliberate intention of dislodging his rider. This requires a secure seat and good horsemanship, and as little notice as possible should be taken of his waywardness. If he perceives that the rider does not respond in the way that he anticipated (parting company with the saddle), he will in all probability give up this undesirable habit.

In every case we must endeavour to show as little concern as possible. The more fuss we make the more importance our mount will attach to each incident.

Refusing to Walk. Many horses, through being badly broken, persist in jogging when they are required to walk. This is not infrequently due to overbitting, in which case a milder bit should be used, and continuous riding with a loose rein will generally prove a satisfactory remedy. Long, steady exercise at a walk up to three hours' duration may be indulged in with benefit. In tiresome cases it may be cured by pinching a bit of skin on the shoulder between the finger and thumb and saying "walk." This causes discomfort when jogging, which is relieved when the horse walks, and he eventually appreciates this fact.

I need hardly repeat that lack of exercise is a natural incentive to this trying habit.

o

Pullers. There are many reasons for pulling, and undoubtedly experience and good hands alone can compete with this nuisance, when it is the case of a confirmed puller. But there are many instances where judicious treatment, in the early stages, will be successful.

In the first place a horse may be wrongly bitted, and a light-mouthed animal may become so irritated by a severe bit under the control of heavy hands, that he will manifest his discomfort by taking charge and running away. The same animal in all probability will be found to go perfectly well with light handling and when ridden with a milder bit in his mouth. Possibly the short-cheeked double bridle or a pelham (but no high port), and a curb-chain adjusted loosely will be found the correct remedy.

Now let us take the case of a horse who may pull in a light bit, but may yet ride quite well with a longer cheek and rather tighter curb-chain. The angle at which the bit will bear most severely on the mouth is between 45 and 60 degrees—that is, the angle taken between the cheek of the bit and the bar of the mouth, which necessitates a tight curb-chain. The bearing of the bit becomes less severe with a more obtuse angle up to 90 degrees, but once beyond this, there is no lever action of the curb-chain and the bit and consequently the power of control is diminished. Therefore it is essential for the rider to study the adjustment of the curb-chain to obtain the required control of his horse.

Generally speaking, in the case of a puller, the curb-bit should be put low down in the mouth, and any attempt to maintain a dead pull on the reins, which will inevitably result in the mouth losing its sensitiveness, must be most carefully avoided. If,

in spite of careful bitting, the horse still persists in pulling, it is a good plan, should you get the opportunity, to urge him to a fully extended gallop uphill on a loose rein, pulling him up as he approaches the crest. At this point it will be advisable to use the bridoon and curb-bit alternately and thus minimise the possibility of rendering the bars of the mouth insensitive.

There is no doubt that a nervous and inexperienced rider often imagines that his horse is going to pull, and through never leaving his head free, the animal has considerable difficulty in appreciating whether his rider really wishes him to pull up or not. It is more than probable that once given his head, the animal will be found to have no desire to increase his pace, and once both the rider and his mount begin to understand each other, their difficulties will disappear.

There are some headstrong animals who, possibly due to having been raced, persistently take a strong hold, and if these are found to be out of control in a curb-bit, two snaffles may possibly be found a more efficient method of dealing with them.

Some horses pull by getting their heads down, and these will frequently ride better and be lighter on the hand if the bridoon is replaced by a gag-snaffle. Others, on the other hand, deliberately evade the bit by pushing their noses up, and in such cases a standing martingale attached to the noseband, while yet allowing the muzzle to be level with the withers, will render them more amenable to control.

A very common source of pulling, though seldom realised, is due to a horse getting his tongue over the bit. In this case a small grid may be placed in the mouth and attached to the port, or centre of the bar of the bit, by a tape, allowing about half an inch play between the two. The horse will now find

it impossible to get his tongue over the bit, by which means the sensitiveness of the mouth was previously deadened. These grids can be obtained from Messrs. Sowter and other well-known saddlers. It will generally be found that a horse, when first ridden with the grid, will continue to draw back its tongue, but in time, finding that he is unable to get it over the bit, he will give up the attempt and keep it in its natural position.

Undoubtedly many animals will pull when they are over-fresh, but will cease to do so when they are given regular and sufficient exercise.

If a rider should find that he is unable to stop his horse, he should, if possible, endeavour to keep it moving in a large circle, and needless to say, if he entertains any doubts as to his ability to control his mount out hunting, he should keep clear of the rest of the field and hounds. He should seize the first opportunity, on suitable ground, to let his horse extend himself with a free rein and then endeavour to pull him up quietly, using his voice, and if necessary drawing the bridoon or snaffle across his mouth from one side to the other, always remembering that a dead and continuous pull on the reins can only defeat his object. I have seen a runaway horse successfully pulled up, by the rider jumping off on to his feet, while still retaining the near side reins close up to the bit in his hands and hanging the whole of his weight on these. Needless to say, this is the last resort. A horse without a bridle may be stopped by squeezing the muzzle just above the nostrils between the fingers and the thumb.

Severe Bits. Severe bits that will inevitably cut a horse's mouth cannot be recommended. Though the animal may not appear to pull at first and when going slowly, it is highly probable that when he starts galloping, this type of bit will injure the

mouth and eventually afford no better means of control.

Occasionally a curb-chain worn rough instead of smooth may check a horse that is inclined to hang on the hand, and this is preferable to a very severe bit.

Animals that pull, and which obviously have one-sided mouths as well, should have their mouths carefully examined. It may be due to an injury on one side of the mouth, or possibly a wolf-tooth which should be extracted. (See Chapter XII.)

Kicking. There are two forms of kicking: the first—an animal that strikes out with one, or both legs, at other horses in a crowd, which is a constant source of trouble out hunting. When riding a horse addicted to this, care should be taken to stand clear of other animals, but much can be done by distracting the horse's attention by continually and gently playing the bit in his mouth. Bad kickers should have a red ribbon tied on their tails out hunting.

The second type of kicker is one which lashes out with both hind legs, and will probably continue to do so with the intent of dislodging his rider. The latter should make every endeavour to keep the horse's head up, as, when carried low, he will be more difficult to sit. The rider should grip tight with his legs, raising his seat in the saddle, and although leaning back when the horse kicks, by being just clear of the saddle, he will not feel the concussion due to the animal's exertion. In the case of a persistent kicker, he may be punished by recurrent chucks in the mouth with the bridoon or snaffle, a hit on the shoulder, and then made to rein back.

Inadequate exercise certainly intensifies this vice, a fact we realise when we describe a horse as being too tired to have a "kick left in him."

Bucking. Horses will often show a tendency to buck or kick when first saddled, and such horses should be led about for some time after being saddled up to get their backs down. Generally these animals suffer from cold backs (undue sensitiveness), and it may even be necessary to lunge them for a quarter of an hour or so, until they are accustomed to the feeling of the saddle. Some horses have such tender skins that, although they may not be genuine buckers, they will put up a fair imitation of this practice, unless a sheepskin or Jaeger pad is placed under the saddle. This latter peculiarity cannot in any way be considered a vice. One of the best polo ponies I have ever ridden, with a charming disposition, was an entirely different animal according to whether she was saddled with a sheepskin next to her back or not.

The most tiresome trait that one frequently encounters with a bucking horse is, when he appears to be going quietly and contentedly and then takes you unawares, dropping his head between his legs and giving possibly half a dozen bucks, unless by chance he should have been successful in achieving his object with the first attempt. Australian horses, who are proverbially the worst buckers, will be so violent in their action that they may tear the girths from the saddle. The difficulty in riding a bucker is, that the first effort may partially dislodge the rider, and the second buck will follow so quickly that he has practically no time to re-establish himself in the saddle. The whole effect is much more violent than kicking.

When riding a horse that is given this way, one must always be prepared instantly to grip as tightly as possible and at the first buck, raise oneself off the saddle and lean back ; even though one may be partially dislodged, one must instantly

endeavour to regain one's position and be prepared for further eventualities. Provided one can retain one's seat, the animal will get tired himself and eventually admit defeat. If the horse has a light mouth, the rider may be able to keep his head up, which will largely minimise the effect of his mount's efforts. But, in the case of a genuine bucker, part of his strategy is to pull the rider forward as he lowers his head between his legs, and in this case one must depend upon grip and quick adjustment of one's balance. Most animals will be found to relinquish this vice if persistently unsuccessful in dislodging their riders, as the act of bucking is excessive exertion. Provided the latter is secure in the saddle, two or three hits on the shoulder will indicate that this habit will not be tolerated without retaliation. Punishment in this, as in every case, must be given at the actual time of the offence, or it is more than likely to be misunderstood by the horse.

Rearing. This is a singularly unpleasant vice, as although the horse does not intend to fall over backwards, he is liable to do so if the rider pulls on the reins, or the animal's hind feet slip. If a horse is known to have acquired this habit it is certainly unwise to buy him. On the other hand, if one is unfortunate enough to possess a rearer, he should be saddled with a breast-plate, so that the rider can hold on to this and thus ensure against pulling the horse over with the bit.

When he first attempts to rear, the hands should be kept low and his head turned to one side, under which conditions it will be more difficult for him to stand up on his hind legs. But once poised in the air, any serious restraint on the bit is liable to overbalance him. It is as well to relinquish the stirrups the more easily to fall free should occasion

arise. As a rule a horse that paws the air with his forelegs will not come over backwards, though there can be no guarantee of this if the rider should clutch on to the reins. Ample exercise in long reins and a restricted diet may restrain but not definitely cure this vice.

Nappy Horses. This peculiarity is displayed at the most unaccountable times and places. For some reason a horse refuses to turn up a road, or even to trot straight down a lane. He exhibits his disinclination sometimes by getting up on his hind legs, but always persists in turning to one side, invariably whipping round to the same side. The natural tendency of the rider is to insist on making him turn in the direction which he is trying to evade, and if he is astride a thoroughly nappy animal a fight will ensue. Should they be on a tarmac road the result would in all probability be most disastrous. There is only one cure. In the first place, do not use a whip or show any signs of annoyance, but continue to turn him round in circles four or five times in the direction that he favours and then proceed on your road. If he still persists in this waywardness, repeat the process and he will become so bored that he will readily concede to your wishes. On every occasion that he turns nappy, put him through the same treatment, and in three or four days he will relinquish the tiresome habit.

One must remember that freshness and overfeeding are conducive to such shows of temper, but regular exercise and the above method of dealing with the trouble will be found successful.

CHAPTER XVI

RACING OVER FENCES

MANY amateurs are eager to train their own horses for point-to-point races or Hunt steeplechases, and, provided that they have suitable ground, requisite fences for schooling and animals to work with their own, they can do so.

Naturally towards the end of the hunting season hunters vary considerably in condition, and one cannot train a horse that has worn light in the same way as one that has kept big conditioned during hunting.

We will first consider the hunter chaser.

Normal Procedure of Training. Normally the procedure for all training is divided into three periods. (One)—Building up into big condition. (Two)—Hardening or muscling up. (Three)—Clearing the wind and respiratory organs.

In the case of a hunter being put into training, he must be placed in one of the above categories, according to the time available before he is due to run and his present condition.

Building Up in Condition. First period. (a) It is essential in the first place to make the horse really big and healthy.[1] Unless he starts his training in robust condition he will very soon wear light with fast work, evince signs of staleness and never show his true form. Thus, a hunter that runs up light, must be put aside and stopped hunting much

[1] A gross, soft condition is undesirable.

earlier than a big and hard-conditioned animal. Consequently, the period of time that it will take to get a horse healthy and well covered cannot be definitely stated, as it will vary with each individual animal.

An hour and a half's walking exercise will suffice during this period. It is probable that only a fortnight to three weeks will be available to set aside for this purpose for the average horse that has been fairly hunted, though several months may frequently be devoted to an animal in regular training. But with the hunter, these three weeks will give him the opportunity of picking up and preparing him for the more strenuous work ahead.

With regard to feeding, each animal must be studied individually. There are, of course, many methods and theories on this subject, but whichever is adopted, it must be based on a system which carefully regulates the feeds of each horse according to the amount of work that he is doing. One should know the exact amount consumed by each animal. Only the most careful supervision will prevent cases of colic and indigestion due to overfeeding or bolting the food and, at the same time, ensure that delicate animals consume an adequate amount.

Feeds should be given regularly at least four times a day, and the hours of exercise should be regular so as to conform to the times for feeding. (See Chapter II on Feeding.)

Linseed should be given regularly, as no horse will thrive unless he is loose in his skin and has a bloom on his coat. Only the best hay should be given, and during this period the horse may have up to fourteen pounds of hay and nine pounds of oats with the following additional warm feed, which

should be given every evening : two pounds of boiled rye or barley with one pound of boiled peas (two years old), mixed with half a pound of boiled linseed, half a pound of steamed bran, and one pound of steamed oats. Salt should be added and two tablespoonfuls of charcoal well mixed in the feed will assist the digestion of delicate animals. The charcoal may be given in smaller quantities until the horse gets used to it. Needless to say, this feed should be prepared in the morning.

When making the feed, after boiling the rye and peas it should be turned out into a mash-tub with first a layer of bran on top, then the oats (crushed), after which it should be covered with a sack and left for a couple of hours. The bran absorbs the liquid and begins to swell at once, and the steam rising has a similar effect on the oats, which would otherwise swell in the horse's stomach.

This will allow of an average of thirteen pounds of grain daily, of which four pounds are given in the hot feed. A horse that does not appear to be thriving may be given a wineglassful of cod liver oil in thrice the amount of treacle mixed in his feed once a day. Rock salt and water should always be in the box.

The object of this first period is to put on flesh, with sufficient exercise to keep the horse in health, give him an appetite for his food and maintain his digestion in good order.

It will frequently be found that many animals feed best at night and their meals should be arranged accordingly, giving a final feed at 8.30 each night. To ensure that hard grain is thoroughly digested, it should be crushed and well mixed with chaff, so that the horse will masticate it properly.

After three weeks on this diet, he will require extra work or he will show the effects of over-

heating food. In any case two ounces of Epsom-salts in a bran and linseed mash should be given once a week to obviate any possibility of this.

Needless to say, your charges should be groomed thoroughly every morning and well wisped and rubbed down at evening stables. After the midday feed the stables should be shut up and kept quiet. Highly strung animals are more likely to thrive and feed up, if they are not distracted by noise.

Muscling-up Period. (b) The second period is normally the process of gradually turning this acquired flesh into muscle, by increased exercise and cantering work. The average hunter would naturally be pretty hard before he was put aside, so although we will have freshened and built him up, he will not now be really soft. Consequently we may allow about two weeks for this period. He should not be extended in a gallop yet, but he may be given a sharp canter, preferably about six furlongs up a slight gradient and on good going in company with other horses.

The boiled feed (in (a)) should be given in the afternoon on the days previous to which the horse will be doing any fast work, and hay may now be reduced and the ration of corn augmented in proportion to the extra work now demanded. This increase of corn should be gradual, approximately four pounds reduction of hay being replaced by two pounds extra corn. It should be instantly noted whenever a horse is losing his appetite, which will probably indicate that he is being given too much work before he is ready to stand it.

On the days not allotted to fast work, he should have two and a half hours' walking and trotting exercise and he may be schooled on two mornings a week.

Presumably a hunter will have some idea of

negotiating his fences, but will dwell in his jumping. However, it is advisable that he should jump his first two schools deliberately, as this will give him confidence, especially if he is jumping in company. Subsequently schooling should be carried out at a good sharp pace, and if the fences are well sloped and rather below the regulation size he will soon learn to stand back without losing time.

This gradual increase in work, both in duration and speed, will muscle up the horse and harden his legs in preparation for the third period.

Clearing the Wind. (c) The third period is devoted to making the horse clean in his wind, and owing to the fact that this can only be attained by really fast work, it entails considerable effort and consequent strain on the horse's legs. Therefore it is important to impose as little weight as possible on his back during this period, and though not necessarily plated, he should be shod with light shoes.

If he goes off his feed after his extended gallops, he should be eased in his work until he resumes his normal appetite.

During the first week, two half-speed gallops (extended, but well inside his fastest pace not exceeding a mile) should be sufficient; allow two days between these gallops when he may walk and trot. This leaves two days in the week when he may do slow cantering work or a school over fences.

The programme for the second week may be arranged on similar lines, the half-speed gallops being increased to one and a half miles, and, if necessary, two sharp schools over fences. Schooling might take place on Wednesday and Friday, and the gallops on Monday and Saturday.

The following is a possible programme for the

third week, which in this case would be just previous to a race :

[1] *Monday* : One and a half miles, half speed.
Tuesday : Walking and trotting.
Wednesday : Two miles, half speed.
Thursday : Walking and trotting.
Friday : Cantering work and a school.
Saturday : Fast gallop, about five furlongs.

Method Modified to Suit Individual Animals. The above suggestions cover a period of from six weeks to two months and can be little more than a rough guide, being based on the training applicable to a hunter required to run in hunt races in the spring. It must obviously be modified when necessary. For example, in the case of a hunter arriving in big condition, the first period may be entirely eliminated. Provided he is a good doer, he will work gradually into period (c), as his hunting will already have muscled him up. Possibly he may be a gross horse, and will consequently require a longer period of fast work (c) to get his wind right for racing.

A highly strung horse will be liable to go off his feed and run up light with gallops, but in this case his respiratory organs will not require the same amount of fast work to put them right, and quite possibly three half-speed gallops a fortnight will suffice, whereas an impetuous animal will possibly derive more benefit from long, steady cantering work.

A horse that is backward in his fencing will obviously require more schooling, and this may replace some of the half-speed work included in his programme.

Thus it is evident, that a horse put away from hunting to be trained, must be classified in one of

[1] For a robust good feeder.

the three categories, and a syllabus of his work arranged in accordance with the time available.

Horses should be out of their stables for about two hours a day, and before doing any fast work should have a trot and may then be taught to stand in line until it comes to their turn to do their gallop. This practice very soon accustoms them to the start, and such animals will stand quietly, but ready, at the starting-gate.

Horses Must be Contented. It is most important for a horse in training to feel happy and contented and to be quietly handled. An animal eating a large quantity of concentrated food is generally in a highly-strung condition, and the quieter he is kept, the less will he be worried by nerves.

Trials seldom serve a useful purpose, are generally misleading, and should be avoided in so far as we are here concerned.

Avoid Over-straining an Unfit Horse. Horses should gallop side by side, and animals of approximately the same pace paired together, the pace being definitely set by one of them. Pushing a horse in a gallop before he is fit, unless he is a recognised sluggard, will have the opposite effect to bringing him on. In a final gallop before a race, if he is allowed to go away from his companion, it will make him eager and will give him confidence in himself. Many horses eventually refuse to try owing to being asked too much at the commencement of their racing career, and this fact applies, although in a lesser degree, when imposing too great a tax on their nervous energy during training.

Nervous Energy. It must be remembered that some horses have hearts of lions (extreme nervous energy), and although they may not show their true form in gallops at home, they can always be depended upon to pull out the last ounce in a race.

In fact it is these gallant ones who, through sheer gameness, are likely to break down, as they insist on battling out a race, even though their legs are feeling the strain. On the other hand, a smaller-hearted animal (less nervous energy) will cave in at the first symptoms of distress. It is this latter class which we must be careful not to discourage in the early stages, rendering them liable to lose confidence in themselves in a race. But the fact remains that there are, and always will be, big-hearted, generous animals and genuine shirkers.

Confidence on a Racecourse. If a horse can be given an easy race his first time out, he will be less liable to suffer from nerves when he comes on to a racecourse on future occasions. It is unnecessary to gallop horses the full distance that they are required to run in a race, and it is most unlikely that the amateur trainer would have suitable ground or facilities for doing this.

First Appearance in Public. Undoubtedly much of the training is legitimately gained on the racecourse. It is for this reason that it is often advisable to run a horse in a handicap with experienced animals for his first venture in preference to competing in a maiden race. In the former, though he may have no chance, he will be in company with good jumpers, whereas in the latter, there are sure to be a certain number of mistakes made, and he may get into trouble before he has confidence and the necessary assurance to look after himself.

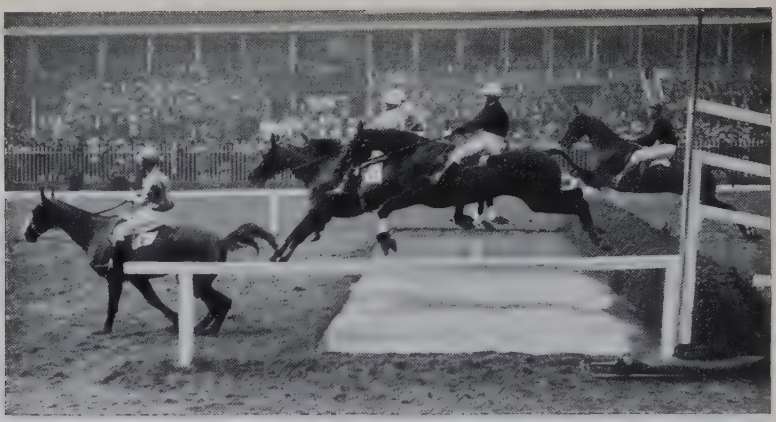
Schooling. After the first two schools the hunter should be well acquainted with his fences, and all subsequent schooling should be carried out at a good half speed. Boots should be worn to protect the forelegs from blows or possible overreaches above the fetlock joints. Unlike a hunter, who should jump collectedly out of a canter, the chaser

Photos Sport & General **Plates 71 & 72**

STEEPLECHASING

ALWAYS ENDEAVOUR TO GET IN FRONT OF A LOOSE HORSE AT A FENCE.

SUCCESSFUL TRAINERS PAY GREAT ATTENTION TO GOOD HANDS. AN IMPETUOUS HORSE MAY BE STEADIED 50 YARDS FROM THE FENCE, NOT INSIDE THE WINGS, WHEN HE REQUIRES FREEDOM OF HIS HEAD TO JUMP.



Photos. Sport & General

Plates 73 & 74

THE "WATER" AT LIVERPOOL

ONCE A HORSE HAS LANDED THE SOONER HIS RIDER IS SITTING OVER HIS WITHERS, I.E. THE POSITION FOR THE GALLOP, THE QUICKER HIS MOUNT WILL GET AWAY FROM HIS FENCE AND INTO HIS STRIDE.

THE SEAT ADOPTED THROUGHOUT A HURDLE RACE

must, if anything, extend his paces when coming at his fences and on no account be allowed to check his speed. When possible a "schoolmaster" may be employed to lead the youngsters, keeping about twenty yards ahead, the latter jumping side by side. Jumping at speed will teach a horse to stand back, and on landing, his rider should be sitting in the position for the gallop, not back on his horse's loins, so that his mount can get quickly away from his fences.

For schooling or racing, it is necessary to ride shorter than for hunting, though the rider should not attempt to adopt the extreme flat-racing seat. This may be eminently suitable over hurdles, and undoubtedly, provided a horse makes no mistakes, the fact of the weight being poised at all periods of the race over the horse's centre of gravity (just behind the withers) will reduce his efforts to a minimum. However, once the horse has made his spring, and when actually in mid-air, he will be little affected by his jockey leaning back; but if the latter is still laying back when his horse is endeavouring to get away from the fence in his gallop, he will be considerably hindered by the weight near his loins.

A horse must be able to stretch his neck fully, if he is to stand back and gain at his fences. In fact, a light-mouthed horse may be observed to lose ground if ridden with a heavy hand, though he will not do so if he is allowed the rein he demands.

An effortless jumper gets a breather over his fences, whereas in the case of a horse landing awkwardly, possibly through bad jockeyship, the effect is the reverse. In fact, after one or two such incidents, he will quickly show marked symptoms of distress.

A horse that is too deliberate, or is inclined to be

sluggish, must be driven well at his fences by the rider's legs, and every effort must be made to keep him level with, and take off beside, his neighbour. It is a mistake to school horses over fences if they are tired, as this will teach them the possibility of negotiating an obstacle without attempting to clear it. If he is inclined to take liberties with his fences when schooled, he should be put back to jump smaller but solid obstacles with a guard-rail two or three feet away, and made to jump out of a trot. It may not be easy to do this, and undoubtedly it requires a good horseman, but it certainly has the effect of making a horse get up at his fences, and a guard-rail at the same time will necessitate his standing back.

When riding a school it is most important to hold a horse straight and from the start prevent any tendency to jump crooked. If this is not corrected in the early stages, the habit will very soon develop and instead of attempting to meet his fences right, the horse will endeavour to get the necessary space on the take-off side by jumping sideways. There should be no check or variation in the pace when schooling, each taking his fences in his stride and retaining the same speed throughout. If anything, there should be an inclination to extend the stride, rather than shorten it, on approaching a jump.

Modification of Work between Engagements. Once a horse has actually started racing, his work must be modified between engagements so as to keep him fresh and fit, with only sufficient galloping between successive races to ensure that his wind is right.

Care of Legs. Most careful attention must be paid to horses' legs when in training, and the first indications of any heat or swelling should be instantly noted. If this warning of nature is dis-

regarded, the result, in all probability, will be a sprained tendon or ligament. If there are pain and heat, hot fomentations, followed by antiphlogistine or autoplasm, should be applied to the affected parts. If there are still heat and swelling, which are probably accompanied by considerable soreness, after forty-eight hours' application of the above, it is as well to seek expert advice. If, on the other hand, the heat and swelling have practically subsided the following dressing may be put on every day until the limb is quite normal:

Cooling and Absorbent Application. One ounce of sugar of lead, half a pint of distilled water, one ounce of camphor, half a pint of methylated spirits. To be kept in a bottle well corked and shaken before use. The above should be mixed fresh every day with Fuller's Earth and applied to the leg as a paste.

On no account should the horse be allowed to do fast work as long as there is heat in the leg.

The above application may be kept continuously on doubtful legs where there is any tendency to swell. It should be plastered on morning and evening so that it will benefit the limb through being moist and cold.

Scratches and blows that break the skin should be washed out with disinfectant and painted with iodine.

Shoeing and Treatment of Feet. *Plates.* Chasers should, when feasible, run in aluminium plates, as any unnecessary weight at the extremity of the limbs affects the horse in an astonishing degree. These plates will not stand any road work and should be removed except for racing; the hind shoes should have caulkins, and care must be taken that they have no sharp edge on the inside, which otherwise might cause a serious overreach.

Though it will be necessary periodically (every four weeks) to rasp down the toes of horses in training, no horn should be taken off at the heels, as the plates must be frequently removed, and owing to the large number of nail-holes employed to hold them to the foot, any reduction in the horn other than at the toe will add to the difficulty of shoeing.

Bandages. Though it is questionable whether bandages are in any way a support to the leg, they are some protection against blows and overreaches when racing. A layer of cotton-wool should always be put on first and a crêpe bandage securely adjusted over this, the loose end at the top being firmly sewn with needle and thread. (See Chapter VII.)

Walking the Course. Before riding a race always walk over the course, so that you may take note of where the going is heavy ; also the various gradients and turns, as undoubtedly it will, at times, be advantageous to jump a fence at an angle just before coming to an actual bend. Very often after heavy rain, it will be advisable to decide on any especially bad patches that you will endeavour to avoid. Although you will frequently find it difficult to follow out your plan in the actual race, this previous acquaintance with the conditions of the course will, more often than not, stand you in good stead.

Riding the Race. It is necessary to note the gradients, as it is inadvisable to endeavour to gain ground uphill, though you may certainly put on steam coming down. Consequently, it is preferable, when possible, to be in the van when on the upward gradient, though obviously in the early stages of the race you cannot afford to press your horse beyond his pace to keep there.

Always endeavour to make a point of riding the

Plate 75

"COMBINED TRAINING"—30 YEARS OLD

A VERY ATTRACTIVE COMPACT TYPE OF HORSE WITH QUALITY AND A MOST INTELLIGENT DISPOSITION. AN EXCEPTIONAL HUNTER AND WINNER OF MANY JUMPING PRIZES INCLUDING THE KING'S CUP AND "DAILY MAIL" CHAMPIONSHIP AT OLYMPIA.

Photos. Sport & General **Plates 76 & 77**

THE AINTREE FENCES SHOW THE NECESSITY FOR SITTING BACK AND GIVING THE HORSE HIS REIN.

THERE IS NOT THE SAME RESPECT FOR A SMALLER PARK COURSE FENCE.

shortest course as, although you can give weight, you cannot give distance.

If you are on the outside at a bend, with a hard puller next to you on the inner flank, you may find yourself carried out wide and thus lose ground.

Avoid jumping on the right of a horse that jumps right-handed, and vice versa.

Never give ground at the start, as it must obviously be made up during some period of the race.

As to the place you keep in the race, this will obviously depend on the quality and capacity of the rest of the field, but it must also be influenced by the staying power of your own horse. If he is a one-pace animal, make sure that he is going what you know to be his pace, even though you may find yourself in front. If, on the other hand, your mount is known to have a useful turn of speed, you can afford to let others make the running, provided that you do not let them get so far ahead that you will be unable to catch them. Perhaps the best advice for a beginner, until he has a knowledge of pace, is, to get well off at the start, sit as still as possible, and lay well up with the field.

It is seldom much use fighting against a puller in the early stages of a race ; you must endeavour to steady him gradually, and, generally speaking, it is easier to take a pull at him immediately after jumping a fence.

Should your horse blunder and consequently lose ground, the chances are that he will have taken some of the wind out of himself. Under these circstances, it is better to get him going steadily on his legs before attempting to make up ground, though this does not apply to a mistake at the last fence.

When riding at the latter in company with other horses it should literally be taken as though it did not exist, as any tendency of the horse to check now

will mean the loss of a length or so, and thus jeopardise his chances of being in front when he passes the judge's box.

The Whip. It is strongly recommended that the beginner should ride out his horse at the finish with his hands and legs, rather than attempt to use his whip. The whip in the hands of an inexperienced jockey will probably make the horse swerve or change his legs, and undoubtedly many horses are sickened of racing by its abuse.

Riding over hurdles certainly has the effect of sharpening up the embryo jockey and steeplechase horse, provided the latter is not by nature a chancy fencer.

Weighing. Remember that you weigh out with your saddle, weight cloth, number cloth, martingale or rings, and breast girth, if required, stating that you have these ; but you must not retain your whip in the scales. Before mounting look carefully at your saddlery and see that everything is correct. Remember that races have been lost through loose girths and broken leathers. If a saddle is liable to slip back, as is the case with some horses, a breast girth should be worn. If, when weighing in, you fail to draw the weight you can claim to be weighed with your bridle. Remember, if your horse is placed, you must not dismount except in the enclosure especially provided for the winner and placed horses. Even on the fourth horse, you should ride up to this enclosure, dismount with your saddle and ask at the scales if it is necessary for you to weigh in. In fact, all jockeys should enquire at the scales, whether they are required or not. Once the weights are declared "all right," placed horses may leave the enclosure.

Care of Horse after the Race. After a race, let your horse have a small drink and allow him to

walk about until he cools off. He should then be rubbed thoroughly dry in his box and finally rugged up and bandaged. While being dried he may be allowed to pick at a bit of hay, and later be given a gruel. Your man should watch carefully to see that he does not break out again, and must, on no account, leave him until he is satisfied that he has finished sweating.

Travelling to and from a Meeting. Animals are liable to lose considerable weight on a long journey, which one naturally wishes to avoid. Under these circumstances they should, if possible, be despatched for a distant engagement at least a day before the race, to give them an opportunity of recovering from the journey. On the other hand, animals that will not feed away from home should be sent as late as possible, and it is often advisable to send corn with them, as a change of corn is sometimes liable to prevent them feeding. Except for long distances, and especially if it is a difficult cross-country journey, horses will travel better in a motor horse van than in a train. These can frequently be hired in the vicinity, though possibly at slightly greater cost than the actual train fare.

Both travelling to and from a meeting, the horse should be rugged up and travel with knee-caps and flannel bandages on his legs. Food should be taken and he should be given every inducement to feed on the journey, though he should not be permitted to eat or drink for four clear hours before the race. If he is travelling overnight, arrangements should be made for a loose box on or near the course for his reception on arrival.

On the morning of the race, as far as possible normal routine should be adhered to, the horse being taken out for early exercise and a "pipe opener," so that, when back in his stable, he may

be under the impression that he has finished his work for the day, and in all probability he will eat up his morning feed.

If the horse is highly strung, endeavour to secure your box where he will not be disturbed by the actual noise of the course. The door should be be locked and he should be kept as quiet as possible.

Point-to-Point Races. The training of horses for point-to-point can only be based on the suggestions laid down for training the hunter for steeplechases. It is unlikely, and for that matter undesirable, that these horses should be put aside, for six weeks to two months, before running. In their case, it is suggested that a week of slow work to freshen them up will be ample, and in the subsequent two weeks two or three schools, and the same number of fast gallops from half a mile to a mile, will probably suffice. Generally speaking, there is a tendency to over-gallop a hunter prior to his running in point-to-point races.

Though he may have been hunted in a double bridle, he should be raced in a snaffle with a running martingale or rings as required.

Necessary Gear. While on the subject of gear, the reins of the snaffle should have india-rubber covers or the leather plaited, as this will prevent them slipping when wet.

Be sure that your saddle is comfortable and all stitching in a sound condition. Generally, it is better to ride in a largish saddle without carrying lead, than in a smaller one, which may necessitate a certain amount of dead weight. All racing saddles require a knitted pad underneath to protect the withers ; for reduction of weight the padding is reduced to a minimum, and under these circumstances they are liable to press on the withers,

causing considerable pain which would interfere with the horse's jumping.

Cases occur more frequently than is generally believed of races being lost through faulty girths or stirrup leathers, therefore special attention should be paid to these items and one should not depend on borrowing a weight-cloth, lead, etc., at point-to-points.

When india-rubber girths are used care must be taken not to tighten them up as vigorously as would be necessary in the case of an ordinary girth.

Generally speaking, the remarks referring to steeplechasing apply equally to point-to-point races.

Although the old-fashioned type of point-to-point, riding straight across country from one village to another, is seldom practicable now, fences are, or should be, as far as possible left in their natural condition, and to avoid unnecessary risk and at the same time to ensure the correct course being ridden, turning and directing flags are posted as required ; under these circumstances it is essential that competitors should walk the course to make themselves fully acquainted with the lie of the land. This preliminary walk will always repay one, as there will invariably be bad patches of ground and points in some fences that it will be well to avoid, possibly due to a bad take-off or landing. A peck on bad landing will mean the loss of several lengths, the distance by which you may win or lose a race. Also it is most inadvisable to depend upon another jockey to show you the way, as at various stages of the race, if you are going to win, you should be well in the van ; for instance, coming down a nice gradient on perfect going prior to ascending a steep hill, when a mishap to any of the leading horses may leave you alone and in

ignorance of the line to take. Make every effort to be on the inside at each turning flag. In a point-to-point, the angles may be very acute, and it is bad jockeyship if you hold the inside and allow another man to come between you and a flag at any turn and carry you out on a wider course. Make sure that your horse is leading with the inner leg at each bend, be prepared to hold him together over ground that you have previously found to be heavy or rough, and let him stride on over good sound going.

Until you are an experienced jockey do not attempt to use your whip. You will get more out of your horse if you sit as still as possible and then ride him out with your hands and legs at the finish. The misuse of the whip will probably result in him swerving or changing his leg and thus losing ground.

Remember that a horse will take ten days or a fortnight to get over a hard race, though this depends on the vitality and robustness of an animal. But it is better to miss an engagement than to run a stale horse.

As a rule amateur trainers are inclined to over-gallop their horses. A lightly built, clean-winded horse might be well wound up with a couple of gallops a week and the other days devoted to steady uphill work at a trot and walk. I have heard an owner remark, after his horse was beaten by a better class, that he was short of a gallop, and continuing work on that supposition the horse went "down hill." Avoid fast work till your horse is ready, or his legs and condition will fail. Horses are trained as much in their boxes as on the gallops. If they do not thrive on their work you must go easy.

CHAPTER XVII

SHOW JUMPING

THE problem of schooling a young hunter over fences was dealt with in a previous chapter and much contained therein applies equally to the training of a show jumper, but in the latter case the rider must endeavour to exaggerate his methods, and the animal accentuate his efforts.

Although on the Continent there are certain competitions where time is taken into consideration, this is not the case in England, where a definite time limit is laid down within which the course must be completed, and if any competitor exceeds this limit he is eliminated.

This limitation gives the rider time to collect his horse and to place him without hurry at his fences, the reason being that show jumping is a thing apart from steeplechasing; whereas we can safely gallop at some fences, it is advisable, and in fact correct, to ride slowly at certain types of obstacles. It is the man who knows when and how to ride fast or slowly at his fences who will consistently see the end of a hunt.

Riding over the ordinary English show-jumping course, especially in an arena like Olympia, necessitates a horse that will not rush, but can take his fences collectedly and smoothly and is ready to push on the pace when extension as opposed to elevation is required.

Consequently we find at Olympia, that the consistent winner is an animal with an even temperament and readily controlled by the hand and leg. The headstrong sort, galloping full tilt at the flimsy upright obstacles, may at times make a brilliantly spectacular round ; but if he ties with a nicely balanced, smooth-going, easily controlled horse, it is odds on the latter winning in the run-off. He may touch a fence but he will not crash through it, which his impetuous opponent is more than likely to do.

Coming into the ring a second time on the same afternoon, the latter will certainly be more excited than he appeared at his first venture. He will misjudge his fences, and where the pace would land him safe on the far side, racing, it will not prevent him knocking down a gate, if he should meet one wrong, in the show-ring. The best man and horse are those who, possessing the closest understanding and in combination with one another, can take on a fence fast or slow as the situation may demand.

Show jumping and racing fences are two extremes, and anyone who has confined his attention and practice to one alone, will be entirely at sea at the other.

Class of Horse. With regard to the class of horse, great quality is by no means essential, although there is no reason why a thoroughbred should not jump as well in the show-ring as a half-bred ; but, generally speaking, he is retained for some more worthy object, and as an animal of lesser quality is equally good for the purpose, we generally find a large percentage of show jumpers are half-bred horses. Some may be excellent hunters, others may never have jumped a natural fence in their lives, but the good average jumper amongst the hunter

class will not necessarily make a successful show performer; he must possess the unaccountable ability to jump a really big place, say five feet high, in addition to having a natural repugnancy to hitting a fence.

In a cavalry regiment, or at the Equitation School at Weedon, there will be found a large percentage of horses who will jump exceedingly well up to four feet six inches, but above this they fail from sheer lack of the physical ability to negotiate a greater height. Consequently, unless a horse shows signs of having exceptional spring, he is most unlikely to train on as a successful performer.

We can tell this, in the first place, by the feel a young horse gives one, but one can never be sure of success until he has confirmed his first impressions by actually clearing a big fence.

This exceptional spring peculiar to some horses cannot be detected from their conformation any more than in the case of a man. Undoubtedly it is derived from the loins, thighs, hocks, and the limbs from the fetlock joints to the toe of the foot. It is certainly most exceptional for an animal with its hocks so placed that they appear to stand right behind instead of underneath him, to make a jumper of any sort.

One can only say that the hunter type, though he may lack quality, is the stamp required, but in selecting a young horse to train, one must assure oneself that he shows definite indications of the exceptional spring that is essential for a show jumper.

Possibly he may not yet have been trained to jump a really high fence, and under these circumstances we must content ourselves with the ease and cleanness with which he negotiates small obstacles.

Next in importance to the spring is an even

temperament, and an animal possessed of these two qualities and in the hands of a good man will materialise into a star performer in the show-ring ; once proficient (and this will take at least one year of experience), he will continue for many years In fact, with age he becomes more consistent and reliable in his form.

Method of Training. There is no doubt that a show jumper requires very special training and even the most brilliant hunter would only put up a moderate performance the first time he appeared in the show-ring. If possible, a horse that has to be jumped at Olympia should have the advantage of being schooled inside a riding-school, although this is not necessary for outside courses. In any case, the fences, to commence with, should be fairly solid and the more varied and peculiar in appearance the better. As in the case of a youngster, he should be started over small obstacles, and only when he jumps these proficiently and without hesitation, should larger jumps be attempted. By commencing with small fences he is unlikely to become excited, and if rewarded frequently, he will not evince dislike to the monotony of jumping peculiar-looking obstacles in cold blood.

We must pay particular attention to jumping slowly and quietly, with only a short run, and to do this we must have extreme control of his balance so that he can propel himself upwards from his hocks, and then with head outstretched and weight forward, raise his hind quarters well clear of the jump.

One outstanding essential is that the horse must approach the fence with head lowered at the last few strides, otherwise he cannot bring the necessary muscles for propelling and balancing himself into play.

A certain amount of free schooling will make a horse bold and capable of looking after himself, but this is only a means to an end, as it is the combination of the horse and rider together which can alone ensure success.

It is probable that many horses, when being steadied on approaching a fence, will attempt to throw up their heads and thus put themselves out of balance. A standing martingale may be employed to correct this, but the fault is often largely due to the rider, who, in attempting to steady the animal too late, finds himself close up to the fence before his mount has had an opportunity to lower his head. We can thus come to the definite conclusion that no attempt should be made to steady the horse once he is within two lengths of his take-off.

Consequently, when riding a horse that is a bit on the keen side, one must be prepared to steady him after he has landed over the previous fence. He must not, however, be interfered with while actually landing, so no attempt to keep him back should be made until after he has settled into his stride subsequent to his jump.

He should now be collected (i.e. impetus retained by the reins), but at the same time the rider closing his legs sufficiently to his horse to keep his hocks well under him. By these means he approaches the next fence in a collected manner instead of rushing, and we thus avoid the risk of attempting to steady him too late.

From about two to three lengths from the fence the rider can ease the reins, which gives the horse confidence, as he realises that he has the necessary freedom of his head, which he will require to stretch, and in most cases lower and thus make full use of himself when he has to jump. Having been

brought up at a collected pace to within three lengths he has no great difficulty in judging his correct take-off.

In the case of a horse that carries his head low, and neck stretched out at all times, there is less risk of him being put out of his stride if he is steadied too late, but on the other hand, he is obviously not so well balanced, and if inclined to pull, he can do so more easily and is harder to turn round sharp at a fence and jump with a short run. Being naturally down on his forehand he is placed correctly for jumping provided the rider uses his leg sufficiently to keep his hocks under him, but balanced as he is, he is not a handy horse and the disadvantage is further increased if he is a puller, especially when asked to perform in a contracted space like the arena at Olympia.

We now come to the animal with a perfect mouth and balance. Oddly enough this class requires a higher standard of horsemanship than the type already discussed; the understanding between man and horse must be of the closest as each is dependent on the other; the successful combination of both is the finished performance.

The horse is entirely in the hands of the rider, but the former is instantly ready to obey. Should there be a lack of sympathetic handling, or misunderstanding, the combined effort will fail; the man has under his control the most delicate mechanism and he must be sufficiently expert to obtain full value.

They approach each fence at a collected pace, but both realise how many strides are necessary to come within the take-off zone (i.e. the space within eight feet of the fence, and on no account nearer than the actual height); the reins are imperceptibly eased at from two to three lengths

Photo. Mondial

Plates 78 & 79

FREEDOM AND ACTIVITY

IN NEITHER CASE IS THE RIDER'S POSITION EXAGGERATED ; IN EACH THE POSITION OF THE HORSE'S HEAD AND RIDER'S HANDS ARE IN HARMONY. BOTH PICTURES DEMONSTRATE THE NECESSITY FOR GIVING THE HORSE THE REIN HE REQUIRES.

Photos. W. A. Rouch

"BRONCHO"

COL. MALISE GRAHAM, D.S.O., ON THAT CONSISTENT OLD JUMPER. WINNER OF KING GEORGE'S CUP AND MANY OTHER COMPETITIONS.

Plates 80 & 81

CAPT. J. DUDGEON ON A WHALER "FORTY SIX"

WINNER OF KING GEORGE'S CUP, 1928.

from the fence, the horse varying his balance by stretching his head, but making no attempt to rush. The rider applies his legs in time with the animal's stride, thus keeping his hocks under him in spite of the change of balance. Both know where each stride will place them, and as the rider closes his legs the last time his horse will take off. The timing must be correct. If it is desired to gain full extension over a wide obstacle, the horse is given his liberty, possibly a stride earlier, and the rider applies his legs more vigorously, demanding instant and extreme impulsion, even though it may be only for the last few strides.

This delicate mechanism demands such light handling (since the horse is collected at one moment and extended the next), that the rider must ride with sufficiently long reins to ensure that he will on no account interfere with his horse's mouth, which is not the case with a horse approaching his fences with his weight already down on his forehand.

As already stated, the rider's efforts, when show jumping, must be exaggerated. There is little likelihood of his horse falling, and once thoroughly schooled, a refusal will be rare. Consequently, the rider should concentrate not only on leaning forward at the take-off, but also on keeping his weight off the rear of the saddle and his horse's loins whilst in mid-air and when actually landing.

The fact of leaning forward will in no way affect the horse raising his forehand, whereas, if he were leaning back in mid-air, in addition to the increased risk of interference with the animal's mouth, the effect would be to make him drag his hind quarters, instead of raising them clear of the obstacle.

Poised thus, the rider eliminates any risk of disturbing the horse's balance during the jump

through the medium of the reins, which would inevitably result in his hitting a fence.

Throughout the whole training, the types of fences should be as varied as possible, to avoid any display of nervousness when any particularly strange-looking object is encountered. Although, during the preliminary training, he may have been schooled free over strong and solid obstacles, it will not be possible to continue this practice throughout the mounted training. Probably the easiest and surest method of teaching a horse to negotiate his fences with an inch or two to spare, is effected by placing a thin iron piping from four to six inches on either side of, and level with, the top of the fence. This practice is in no way cruel, but is severe enough to make him respect his fences. When he becomes accustomed to jumping an obstacle guarded in this manner, he will continue to allow for a similar clearance when the piping is removed.

When schooling a horse that has jumped six or eight fences without a fault, let him be rewarded, and do not persist in demanding further efforts on his part. He will very soon appreciate the fact that as long as he puts up a good performance, no more will be asked of him. If by chance he has blundered badly at any fence, and possibly hurt himself, he will be nervous of that particular fence, and under the circumstances it is advisable to lower it, until he has regained his confidence. It is as well not to attempt to raise the fence to the original height for another day or so.

There is no doubt that jumpers take years to mature, and provided their legs are sound, they will improve with age. This points to the obvious fact that confidence gained by experience is the basis of consistently good performances.

Some horses of peculiar dispositions are liable to

refuse until they are warmed up. This peculiarity is not uncommon with animals who dread touching a fence, and when out of their stride, rather than knock themselves, they will deliberately refuse. Such animals require a strong horseman to induce them to take off though they may not be at the exact point from which they normally prefer to jump. I can personally remember the case of a mare who could never be relied on to jump at home without refusing one or two fences, but in her particular case, once inside the arena at Olympia, she no longer thought of stopping. Possibly the band, the flowers, and the crowd inspired her and she won the *Daily Mail* Championship and several other events.

Procedure in the Ring. On entering the ring, it is as well not to waste time at the start and so dispense with the possible anxiety of having to hurry through the course later on, as the time will be taken from the moment that you appear in the arena. Concentrate on each fence, riding your horse in the manner that you are both accustomed to when schooling.

It is an entirely different problem to riding over fences racing, when each obstacle should be taken merely as an incident in the race. You may have to steady your horse, in which case you must do so in sufficient time.

You may have to drive him on, which you must do with determination, and when approaching the fence be sure that your weight, largely borne on the knees and the stirrups, and consequently over the horse's centre of gravity, is ready to be advanced as you lean forward at the take-off. You must maintain this position until he has landed. Remember it is fatal to be fighting against an impetuous horse within two or three lengths of a

fence, when it is essential that he should have freedom of his head. Never let a horse approach a fence when he is disunited (his legs not moving in proper rotation, which can easily be felt as an uncomfortable gait). Look at the bottom of the fence, in order that you can appreciate where he should take off, and be instantly ready to go with him when he does so.

Refrain from using a whip, as it is apt to distract his attention and the mere fact of taking your hands off the reins, when he is about to jump, will be of no assistance to him.

Remember that unless you lean forward in sufficient time, you may be thrown back and in all possibility jerk your horse's mouth when in mid-air, forcing his head upwards and bringing his hind quarters down.

Two Definite Types of Jumpers. Generally speaking, there are two classes of show jumpers:

(a) Those that perform on their own without any assistance from the rider and are taught to avoid hitting a fence by constant jumping and rapping.

(b) Those that are carefully balanced and taught to obey the hand and leg of the rider. The latter places his horse at his fence, keeping him on his hocks and makes him take off where and when he wishes. This requires a higher standard of training on the part of both man and horse, but such animals are the most reliable and will seldom make a serious blunder.

Show jumping is only a small part of all-round horsemanship, but its practice will go some way towards making a finished horseman.

CHAPTER XVIII

POLO PONIES

IN these days there are many who would delight in playing polo, but are prevented from ever making a start owing to the expenses connected with the game. This is the real stumbling-block for many a young enthusiast, and unless his purse can withstand the strain of buying expensive, made tournament ponies he must be capable of making his own. Under these circumstances he will have to purchase the raw or half-made article, so this question of acquiring ponies must be our first consideration. These may be roughly divided into the following categories :

(a) The raw, unbroken pony.
(b) The half-made or previously ridden pony.
(c) The first-season pony.
(d) Made ponies.

The type and conformation are the same in each case. The question of size is largely dependent upon the build and weight of the rider. Whereas a small man who is a light-weight would be best suited by a 14-3 pony, the bigger, long-legged man would require a 15 or 15-1 hand animal.

Type. The pony should be as near thoroughbred as possible and of the short-coupled, thoroughbred hunter type, in other words the miniature robust type of racehorse.

Points to Look For. There are certain points eminently desirable:

(1) A kind temperament, yet possessing a bold outlook as expressed by the animal's head and eye.
(2) A pony, not a horse.
(3) Good natural balance as indicated by movement and carriage.
(4) A light, well-set-on head and neck attached to lean, well-sloped shoulders.
(5) Unlimited quality.
(6) The utmost smoothness at all paces.
(7) Good feet and fore limbs.
(8) Ample heart room, i.e. depth through the girth.
(9) If already ridden, at least an unspoilt mouth.
(10) Hocks naturally well under him.

Look carefully for all the above points, and if they exist you have before you the right class of animal. At the same time we must, occasionally, make allowances for the absence of quality in a Whaler or Argentine pony.

Points to Avoid. When determining the above points it is as well to bear in mind the defects that must essentially be avoided.

(A) An ungenerous disposition; a mean eye or prominent forehead.
(B) Hocks too far back, turned out or cow-hocked to a marked degree, and of course badly formed, weak or sickle hocks.
(C) Uneven or big common feet.
(D) Short, upright pasterns.
(E) A neck set too low on to the shoulders and resulting in a heavy forehand, i.e. badly balanced.

Photo. W. A. Rouch **Plate 82**

CAPTAIN THE HON. C. GREENWAY'S POLO PONY SIRE "MALICE"

IN ADDITION TO EXCELLENT CONFORMATION HE POSSESSES THE ACTION AND TEMPERAMENT ESSENTIAL FOR POLO PONIES.

Plates 83 & 84

POLO PONIES

THE AUTHOR CONSIDERS THE GREY ABOUT THE BEST PONY HE EVER OWNED, IN SPITE OF SOME OTHERS BEING INTERNATIONAL PLAYERS. HER UNLIMITED STAMINA, EXCEPTIONAL STAUNCHNESS, SPEED AND HANDINESS WERE MOST PRONOUNCED.

A HIGH-CLASS YOUNG PONY, BUT HAS NOT THE MIDDLE PIECE OR HOCKS OF THE GREY MARE

(F) A head and neck at the wrong angle and consequently opposed to natural flexion, not infrequently connected with a ewe neck.

For procedure on purchase see Chapter XII.

The polo-bred pony is generally the right type and normally has the right temperament.

The breeders are anxious to sell them after being ridden and sufficiently trained to show that the pony has the makings of a good mouth, good temperament, and paces. These are very essential qualifications worth paying for in any animal, and if possessed with the necessary substance and quality the risks are small.

Types such as these should make first-class players, provided that their finishing education is in the right hands.

Owing to the length of time required to train an entirely unbroken pony before it becomes a tournament player (approximately two years, but much depends upon condition), considerable labour and expense are saved by purchasing an animal that has already been hacked about, or, better still, a first-season pony that has not been spoilt.

The Half-made or Previously Ridden Pony. Another advantage of buying a pony that has been previously ridden is that once in the saddle, you are able to try his paces, balance, and mouth, and furthermore obtain some insight as to his temperament, whereas in the case of an unbacked animal you can only judge by his appearance from the ground. With regard to the former, if he is undoubtedly a "slug," the chances are that he will lack in dash and courage in the game. If, on the other hand, he rushes off at full gallop, when you wish to ride him with the loose rein, it is as well to

discard him, as he is unlikely to train on as a first-class pony.

If he gives you the impression of being "woodeny" in the neck and jaw, though he may certainly improve, he is unlikely to mature on the lines required.

If he voluntarily leans on your hands, again, though he may be improved, he is not what you are seeking for. If a young pony's mouth is not fully made, he should be behind the bit; this is natural and can be corrected. Though he may not readily answer the rein, through lack of education, he should not show an inclination to pull against you at all paces. If he shows an obvious tendency to pull when being hacked, it is more than probable that he will develop this intolerable habit when galloped with other animals. Remember that you require a youngster with good natural balance; without this he will be unlikely to acquire a good mouth, as he will be unable easily to control his own momentum.

In short, you can test his paces, which should be smooth and easy; his temperament, which should be neither headstrong nor sluggish; his balance, being neither down in front nor evincing a tendency to bound with his head in the air; his mouth as indicated by his head-carriage, flexion of the neck at the poll and the lower jaw and readiness to ride on a light rein.

First-Season Ponies. A first-season pony (five or six years old) is generally understood to be one that has played in slow chukkers and ordinary games, but not in matches. The chances are that if he has been pushed already into tournaments he will have been spoilt, though there are exceptional animals that are fit to play provided they have the necessary condition. In trying a first-season pony, after first

satisfying ourselves as to his conformation, quality, and action, one's chief consideration is to determine whether he has been spoilt and when riding him we must ask ourselves certain questions.

Is his mouth spoilt?

Has he been definitely trained on the wrong lines, turning and pulling up on his forehand, for instance? If so, is the defective training so marked that he cannot easily be put right?

Does he hot up at fast paces?

Does he shy off the ball?

Does he funk another pony?

Does he appear unwieldy and lack courage?

Does he get his tongue over the bit, or fail to salivate and consequently pull through his mouth being dry?

If he exhibits any of the above defects to a marked degree, he is best left alone, and certainly do not hesitate to discard him if he is an obvious puller or naturally clumsy.

Made Ponies. Ponies with first-class reputations fetch their true value, often more, and the actual price is solely a question of what the buyer can afford. On the other hand, do not buy a bad pony from a good horseman in the vain belief that you will put him right, whereas a pony that a bad horseman cannot get on terms with may possibly suit you. Remember many animals are under-exercised and overfed, and if you suspect this to be the case when trying a pony, you must make allowances accordingly, otherwise you may conceivably lose a good pony.

When buying any made pony, needless to say you must test him on the same lines as suggested for a first-season animal and, generally speaking, you may have the opportunity of trying him in a game, unless you are bidding for him at auction, when it

may not have been possible to have had a previous trial.

Prices. With regard to prices, a good tournament player, as already stated, will fetch its market value. A first-season pony may be bought for £100 to £200, though they can be picked up cheaper at the end of the season.

Good class unplayed ponies range from £60 to £120. It is, however, obviously cheaper in the long run to pay £120 or even more for a likely first-class young animal that may eventually fetch £500, than pay £60 for one which can never be really high class. Practically all ponies, young and old, require some exercise in the form of schooling, which is really gymnastic training to supple and develop various muscles. It is proposed to explain shortly the different stages of training for a young pony up to the time that it will become a tournament player. Possessed of this knowledge, the owner can determine what training he considers necessary for each pony he buys, according to the stage it has reached when purchased, remembering to persevere with correcting faults rather than remaining content with what he already does efficiently.

Training of Young Ponies. Needless to say, an entirely unbroken pony requires most careful handling, mouthing, and breaking.

Long Reins. His early education can best be carried out in the long reins (for details of training polo ponies see *Horse-Sense and Horsemanship*, published by Messrs. Constable & Co.).

By employing this method the youngster can be disciplined and mouthed before imposing any weight on his back. It is also essential for successful training that one should be fully conversant with the analysis of the horse's paces, as explained in the

before-mentioned book. As a result of efficiently conducted long-rein driving a young pony will

(A) Be made obedient and become accustomed to a saddle on its back, at the same time learning to mouth itself.
(B) Learn to obey the trainer's voice.
(C) Halt, turn on the haunches, passage and canter with the correct leg leading.

Thus we commence on the mounted training, having started the youngster on a sound basis for his subsequent education.

Mounting a Youngster. The procedure of mounting a young animal should be gradual.

He should first be accustomed to the weight of the saddle with the girths tightened up and worked in the long reins with this as an introduction to the additional burden of a man's weight. At the end of his daily exercise, lean your weight on the saddle, and after a few days, if he shows no nervousness, he can be quietly mounted with the aid of an assistant. At first he should only be led for a few strides, each subsequent day increasing the length of time that this extra weight is imposed on him. In difficult cases, it may at first be necessary to strap two weighted sacks securely to the saddle, and when he finds that he cannot dislodge these, he can be mounted as above.

In any case it is advisable to have a neck-strap for the rider to hold on to, and thus ensure against the risk of being thrown.

A youngster will always have more confidence if mounted by some one he knows, than if by a stranger. At first the trainer should be content with making his mount walk in a straight line.

Mounted Training. He may then proceed to make him a smooth-actioned hack. In this respect it is

first of all essential that he should walk, trot, and canter freely on a loose rein. There are two points that should especially be borne in mind. Be careful in the early stages never to overtax his immature muscles, nor attempt to overfeed him with oats, or much time will be wasted in getting him to settle down, when we require his undivided attention for any lesson that we may be endeavouring to teach him. There is no objection to riding him with a polo-stick in your hand from the start, and if this is swung quietly during the latter part of his daily exercise, he will take it all as a matter of course, merely considering it part and parcel of his normal load.

First Three Weeks Mounted. During the three weeks that are devoted to free forward movement, we should do no more than teach him to move forward from a pressure of the legs and incline away from a pressure of the rein on his neck. This should be done first at a walk and then at the trot. When teaching him to incline away from the rein, choose the opportunity of doing this, in the first instance, towards his stable. He will thus show no resistance from the start to this simple aid. During this period of free forward movement no attempt should be made to worry him into turning and stopping sharply.

Next Six to Eight Months. The next six to eight months should be devoted to riding-school work. (See Chapters XIII and XIV.) These chapters should be carefully studied, as it is during this period that the rider and his mount get to understand each other. Only by means of patient training can we hope to exact ready compliance to the will of the rider, and this must be effected without any effort on the part of horse or man. If your pony is one day to become really first class, he

must be under absolute control on a loose rein in fast polo. This entails perfect balance.

A horse is said to be balanced when his own weight (and that of his rider) is distributed over each leg in such proportion as to allow him to use himself with the maximum of ease and efficiency at all paces. The head and neck form the governing factors in weight distribution, and it is by their position that the horse carries his weight forward or backward as his paces are extended or collected. This entails education of the pony's brain to know how to turn, stop, change his legs, and control his equilibrium. Thus during this third period we concentrate on conditioning, bitting, suppling, balancing, appreciation of and obedience to the aids, manners, in fact physical and mental education. Whenever you are on your pony's back, make sure that you are not wasting time: you should be getting to understand each other and teaching him something. Take every opportunity of his becoming used to all strange sights and sounds, and every now and then for half a mile or so let him canter along freely on a loose rein.

Remember that most of the school work has a constraining influence and tends to contract his action, and it is on account of this that we must frequently allow him liberty of rein and limbs. Try and consider him, as far as you can, as a human being, remembering that experience will broaden his outlook and give him confidence. What is eventually required is that he should instantly appreciate what is in your mind, which is conveyed to him by means of the aids. By constant repetition, without overtaxing his muscular condition, one can bring him to such a pitch, that he will instantly be ready to obey the slightest indication of your will, and thus is eliminated any excessive effort on the

part of the rider. For example, when hacking across a field, select a tuft of grass that you intend to pass on the near or off side and ride him past this at such a distance that you might conveniently hit a ball at that point. By making a practice of this, he becomes almost unconsciously accustomed to being guided where you wish, before being introduced to the further complications of stick and ball.

It is necessary to emphasise the fact that the actual school work is largely devoted to getting a pony collected, and if this were too rigorously adhered to, he would in time lose his powers of extension and proper conception of balance. He should, therefore, as his training progresses, be extended freely for short periods (extended gallop), and then quietly be brought back to collected work. By this means he retains his natural elasticity, and we may say, that in addition to comprehension of the aids, this period is devoted to the quest of balance.

For example, we allow the pony to be extended in his gallop and wish to teach him to pull up sharp and whip round on his haunches. Before attempting to do this, we must interpolate an intermediate stage, as follows : From a gallop with free rein, close the legs and feel the reins, bringing him quietly back to a collected canter and allowing him to settle down at this pace. By degrees reduce the number of strides at the canter, and by applying a rather more vigorous application of the aids pull him up directly to a halt first from the canter and then from the gallop. If we had attempted to do this straight away, the pony would have resisted, and in all probability his mouth and temperament would have been adversely affected.

With regard to the turn on the haunches, after

halting him, quietly turn him about on the hind limbs as previously explained, gradually sharpening the turn from the halt until eventually he pulls up and whips round simultaneously.

During this period we must be most careful to resist the temptation of endeavouring to push him on too fast, bearing in mind that smoothness at all paces is the keynote to success. As long as your pupil is carrying out his various gymnastic exercises smoothly, you can be assured that they are within the compass of his mental and physical capacity. Whereas jerkiness and apparent clumsiness indicate the reverse, and when demanding too much under these circumstances, we are apt to spoil his mouth, largely due to the fact that this premature strain is having an undesirable effect on his temperament.

Having ridden him in a snaffle during the three weeks' period of free forward movement, it is advisable to continue doing so for at least half of the next period, for the following reasons: (1) We must not run the risk of curtailing his freedom. (2) We can the more easily maintain the necessary impulsion produced by the application of the rider's legs, which is essential before employing a curb bit. (3) Once accustomed to the snaffle and still unfettered by the complicated action of the bit, he will more readily obey the various aids indicated by the rider's hands and legs. (4) Owing to the fact that the snaffle is jointed, he will be less likely to acquire the tiresome habit of getting his tongue over the bit. (5) Furthermore, if his weight is down in front, no useful purpose can be served by riding him in a curb bit, as it is simpler to concentrate on a higher head carriage while employing the snaffle alone. On the other hand, if he is light in front, possesses the necessary impulsion and free-

dom and understands the "leg aids," he may be bitted up. (*vide* Chapter XII.)

The Next Six Months. The fourth period is devoted to the final preparation of the youngster before actually playing in a game. Previous to this stage, we should have ensured that our pupil will ride at all paces on a loose rein, bearing in mind that if he does not fulfil these conditions outside a game of polo, he will inevitably take a hold when in company with other ponies. Many a good polo player falls foul of his ponies because he has not accustomed himself to ride with a loose rein ; thus we see that it is equally important for man and horse. An animal that is accustomed to light handling, will fail to jump off rapidly, and in fact never shows its true form when ridden by heavy-handed horsemen. The latter are therefore dependent upon animals that will take a certain hold, and the best class ponies are consequently lost to them.

If your youngster at this stage evinces a too obvious tendency to lay on his bit, it is very doubtful whether he will train on to be first class. It is for this reason that we drew special attention to this fact when selecting an animal that has already been ridden, and the same considerations apply to a green pony that we are attempting to make.

Undoubtedly horses are born with different temperaments, but excitability and hotheadedness are largely due to a hurried and faulty education. Education in the case of a polo pony means careful training of his brain, and assuming that his temperament is naturally sound, if we are able to make him trot quietly on a loose rein we should find it equally feasible at the gallop. Not only must we train him how to control his balance correctly, i.e. extension and collection, but also the necessity and effect of lateral inclination of his weight. For example, we

have taught him to passage, half-passage and change the leading leg at the canter and gallop. He will require to be leading with the off-fore when we wish to swing him half-right, that is, his weight must be thrown in that direction and the off-fore extended to support it.

If it is desired to ride off another pony on the left, its weight must be inclined in this direction, and consequently the near-fore must be leading. The simplest method of instruction in riding off is as follows : Put two animals on a large circle (say left-handed), with the youngster on the outer flank, making sure that he is level with or slightly in advance of the pony on the inner side. Both will be leading with the near fore, and consequently can only throw their weight left-handed. Under these circumstances the pupil is at an advantage, and will soon learn to get confidence and realise that, provided he is leading with the correct leg and slightly in advance of another pony, he will be able to push him off without difficulty. The same procedure would have to be carried out on the right-hand circle. Needless to say, the young animal should have been taught to half passage at the canter before embarking on the above lesson.

Swinging to Either Hand. Let us now assume that our pony rides light in front, and consequently by this time will have been bitted. Should he endeavour to evade the bit by throwing his head up, a standing martingale may be necessary. Remember that we taught him from the start to incline away from the pressure of the rein against his neck, and there is really no difficulty in doing this, if commenced at the walk as suggested.

The youngster having now learnt to regulate his balance will accordingly change his legs as required when inclined or swung to one side by the pressure

of the rein and the slight inclination of the rider's weight. If we had not, during the previous school training taught him how to change his legs correctly both behind and in front, he would in all probability merely change his forelegs to support himself and thus move disunited. But his instructions, which should have been both mental and physical, will have prepared him for this sudden contingency, and by this time it should be second nature to him to adapt both his balance and limbs correctly.

Turning on the Haunches. Before attempting to knock the ball about at a fast pace, his training should fulfil the following conditions: (A) He should be able to do a figure of eight, changing his legs only when asked to and not anticipating the change himself. (B) He should be able to pull up instantly and turn on the haunches in any direction. (C) Though he may be swung round up to an angle of 45 degrees, when turning any sharper than this, he must pull up on the haunches, turn on them, and jump off in the required direction. The rider must always lean back and close his legs to halt his pony, and while swinging the forehand with the rein, strongly apply the leg on the side opposite to which the turn is made.

Any inclination on the part of his mount to turn on the forehand must be instantly corrected.

Possibly the best corrective is as follows: If, instead of turning on the haunches, we find that the youngster is inclined to let them fly out and consequently pivot on the forehand, we must teach him to make a small circle with the hind legs while describing a larger one with the fore. The effect of this is, that the hind limbs are not only prevented from turning outwards when circling the forehand round but are also made to passage slightly away,

from the rider's leg, thus describing a smaller circle.

After practising him as above, it will be found that he will soon learn to turn round sharply, pivoting on the hind legs. A pony can be taught to jump off quickly by reining him back a couple of strides and then pressing him forward into a canter or gallop, with the required leg leading.

Stick and Ball. Let us now consider knocking a ball about on the pony. In order to eliminate any nervousness in the early stages, polo balls may be left in the manger and sticks hung up in the box, so that he may not connect any unpleasantness with these. Have plenty of balls lying about in the field in which you intend to knock about. In fact you may arrange a lane of parallel lines of balls, tapping first one on the off side and then one on the near, so that if he edges off in one direction, he merely lines himself up along those on the opposite side. At first only attempt to hit the ball gently at a walk, be most careful not to hit him and be sure that he has his head free. By degrees, we can increase the pace, but do not do this if he evinces any nervousness. Do not reach out to hit a ball that is too far away, but merely let your stick swing, pretending to hit a tuft of grass in its place. Frequently dismount and reward your pony and rub him on the neck with the head of the stick or the ball. It is advisable in the first place not to use a hard ball, but to employ a tennis ball or Eton football, as this will eliminate all possible danger of your pony being struck and hurt.

When riding at a canter or faster pace and striking the ball on the near side, your mount should be moving with the near fore leading and vice versa. Remember for your own sake that striking the ball depends upon keeping your eye on it, proper timing,

taking full advantage of speed, your pony's and your own weight behind the stroke. When hitting a backhander on a young pony, never allow him at first to turn after you have made your stroke, but carry on in the same direction, which will not only prevent him getting into the habit of turning on a backhander, but will also enable you to direct and, if necessary, cut a ball in any direction. Later, he may be taught to swing round as you hit so that you can pull a ball round his tail. But if we commence by doing this and are not at pains to make him carry on in a straight line, we will find, as is often the case with badly trained ponies, that he will check, and, anticipating your backhander, attempt to turn whether you desire him to or not. During the latter part of this period, when he has taken kindly to stick and ball, is handy, shows no excitement when ridden with other ponies, and is ready to ride off, he may be played in slow chukkers.

When first introduced to the game it is best to play a youngster either at "I" or Back, as this will enable you to lay out of the game and thus prevent him from being unduly hustled or excited. He should continue to play slowly and knock a ball about with other ponies until he considers this a natural form of exercise, and in fact enjoys it.

If prematurely introduced to fast polo, he is liable to be upset, and we are now really concentrating on gaining his confidence. For short periods and gradually, he should be extended in a chukker, but on no account should he be overtired and only occasionally pulled up sharply, at other times being eased up and circled round quietly.

On the other hand, a pony with a lethargic temperament may be galloped freely alongside another to sharpen him up. Needless to say, before and after every chukker one should carefully

examine his mouth, his bit and curb chain, seeing that the former is not injured and the two latter correctly adjusted.

The Final Six Months. During the next six months, which will carry us into the following polo season, the pony should be ready for fast polo and tournaments. We will know, all too well, any defects that he possesses and must concentrate on eradicating them. Naturally some animals come to hand and take to the game sooner than others, but a first-class pony is worth all the time and trouble spent on it, and a very large percentage are spoilt by being pushed on too quickly. Remember that a pony that has to play in tournaments must be as fit as a racehorse, but, unlike the latter, he must be given sufficient work to prevent any possibility of his being above himself. Lack of condition is a common cause of pulling owing to weariness, and the result of this will be a sore mouth, whereas lack of work will provide the owner with an uncomfortable ride.

Care of Ponies. The greatest attention must be paid to bitting, shoeing, and care of the feet and limbs. Polo boots on the forelegs and bandages on the hind will obviate the risk of blows from a stick or injuries from another pony.

After a chukker ponies should be sponged down, scraped and rubbed dry, and if there is any risk of a chill a Jaeger blanket should be thrown over them. The mouth should be sponged out with clean water.

Hints to Beginners. Perhaps a few words at this juncture to the inexperienced player may not come amiss. Amongst the many faults that one can correct oneself and thus avoid the justifiable wrath of the captain of one's team are the following :

(1) Hanging about instead of instantly getting on to the man you should be marking, either tackling him or crooking his stick.

(2) Being slow when you should be galloping all out either in attack or defence, thus giving your opponents time to deal with the situation and your own side losing the initiative.

(3) Not shaking free and making use of the "no off side" rule when attacking, and consequently relieving your opponents of the onus of marking you.

(4) Hitting a ball round when your own side are waiting and naturally expecting a long hit backhander.

(5) Failing to turn in time in anticipation of a backhander from your own side.

(6) Hitting towards the centre when you are on the defence in your own quarter of the ground.

(7) Misdirection and hitting towards the corner of your opponents' end of the ground when the ball is required in the middle.

(8) Not leaving the ball when you are told to ride the man.

(9) Being guilty of an erratic penultimate shot when you might have placed the ball for an easy shot at goal. Remember games are won by goals scored and not by shots that just miss, which only result in putting your opponents on the offensive. You must first look to see where you wish to hit and then keep your eye on the ball when actually striking.

(10) Attempting a fancy stroke when a straightforward one would have met the case equally well and which was probably anticipated by your team who have placed themselves accordingly.

(11) Failing instantly to come back into the game when you have been carried over the boards.

(12) Allowing an opponent to snatch the ball from you through attempting to dribble instead of playing a full-length stroke.

(13) Failing to back up (not less than 30 yards in rear) a member of your side in possession of the ball.

(14) Waiting in the hopes that your opponent will miss and leave the ball to you. In good polo, if unmolested, he won't miss. On the other hand you may successfully interfere with his hitting if you endeavour to ride and hustle him.

Needless to say you must read up the rules of the game so that you can understand what action is reckoned as a foul, resulting in the award of a penalty against the offending team.

Polo Horsemanship. With regard to Polo Horsemanship, a knowledge of training a pony is an obvious assistance. A man with a good eye for ball games and possessing mental resource will readily take to polo, provided he is coached in team work and not allowed to play a selfish game. As in most games, length on the ball is obtained by following through. A forward stroke on either side of the pony should meet the ball simultaneously to the latter's leading leg coming to the ground, the head of your stick describing a circle parallel to the axis of your pony's advance.

By using a stick that is longer than you require you cannot follow through with a straight arm, and besides losing length on the ball, accuracy of direction becomes more difficult.

Remember that there is a natural tendency for your pony to swing in the direction that your weight is thrown, but your hand on the rein controlling his forehand can adjust this as required.

To make a full-length straightforward stroke on the off side your pony should be leading with the off-fore and on a straight line in the direction you intend to hit the ball. Thus control of your pony will facilitate your stroke and will enable you to have a full swing and follow through parallel to your pony.

Beginners are apt to commence the stroke with their stick at an angle to the pony, and consequently can neither get the direction nor full length on the ball. Similarly on the near side, by turning the body round from the hips, one can take the same swing and follow through. By not turning round left-handed the swing instead of being parallel to the pony will be towards his forelegs, resulting in misdirection of the stroke.

To hit across the pony's forelegs, ride directly on the line of the ball as though you intended to ride over it. Then lean well forward and out of the saddle so as to strike the ball well in front of the animal's forelegs, not through them, which is frequently done.

For a near-side backhander, turn right round in the saddle so as to face square to the left, by which means alone you can obtain a full swing and follow through. This will enable you to cut the ball or hit it straight back. Should you wish to pull it round your pony's tail, hit late, lean well back yourself and swing the pony left-handed with the reins.

Similarly, to pull a backhander on the off-side round your pony's tail, you must hit the ball late, leaning back to do so and swinging your pony right-handed with the reins at the same time.

To cut a ball backward on either side, you should strike the ball earlier as the follow-through of your stroke in any direction diverging from the axis of

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 85

LINING UP FOR THE "THROW-IN" FROM THE BOARDS

NUMBERS 1 OR 2 SHOULD BE NEXT TO THE BOARDS ACCORDING TO THE DRILL AND TACTICS OF THE TEAM.

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 86

H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES TAKING A NEAR-SIDE SHOT

ONE OF HIS SIDE RIDING OFF AND PREVENTING AN OPPONENT FROM INTERFERING.

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 87

LENGTH ON THE BALLS

REMEMBER LENGTH ON THE BALL IS OBTAINED BY CORRECT TIMING. A FOLLOW-THROUGH STROKE WITH A STRAIGHT ARM KEEPING THE EYE ON THE BALL AND FINALLY PLACING THE PONY IN THE MOST ADVANTAGEOUS POSITION FOR HITTING.

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 88

A SHOT AT GOAL

KEEP THE HEAD DOWN AND EYE ON THE BALL WHEN STRIKING IT. TO CUT A BALL IT IS NECESSARY TO MAKE THE STROKE A SHADE LATER AND RATHER FURTHER FROM THE PONY THAN IN THE CASE OF A STRAIGHT SHOT.

Plate 89

THE NEAR-SIDE BACKHANDER

NOTE THE BODY TURNED ROUND FROM THE HIPS TO ENABLE THE STRIKER TO GET A FULL SWING AND DIRECT THE BALL.

Photo. Sport & General

Plate 90

THE STRAIGHTFORWARD OFF-SIDE BACKHANDER

Plates 91 & 92

HITTING ACROSS THE FRONT OF THE PONY

RIDING STRAIGHT ON THE LINE OF THE BALL AND LEANING OUT PREPARATORY TO HITTING.

THE RIDER LEANING WELL FORWARD STRIKES THE BALL IN FRONT OF THE NEAR FORE LEG.

Photo. Sport & General **Plate 93**

THE WRONG WAY

THE CORRECT WAY TO HIT THE BALL ACROSS THE FRONT OF THE PONY IS TO RIDE STRAIGHT ON THE LINE OF THE BALL AND TAKE IT ON THE OFF SIDE.

the pony's advance (i.e. neither parallel to nor across the line) is obviously limited.

Similarly, when cutting a ball forward on either side of the pony the stroke should be slightly later.

Thus it will be seen that Polo Horsemanship entails suppleness in a marked degree so as to be able to lean out of the saddle, turn round from the hips to either flank, and at the same time, no movement should interfere with the bridle hand, which must be free to control the pony. In addition, a knowledge of the riding-school aids, though at times their application may be somewhat haphazard, will assist both man and horse.

In Polo Horsemanship, the combination of the rider and his pony should be such that control appears to be effortless and almost imperceptible.

CHAPTER XIX

PIG-STICKING

LT.-COL. ARTHUR BROOKE, D.S.O., M.C., R.A.

HUNTING the wild boar with hounds and spearing him on foot when brought to bay is a very old sport. The story of the death of Adonis is evidence that it was practised by the ancient Greeks, and that it still flourishes in very similar form among the gypsy tribes of India is well known to every Tent Club secretary who attempts to preserve pig in that country.

But the sport of hog-hunting or pig-sticking as known to-day, that is, riding down the boar and spearing him from the horse's back, seems to have originated no further back than the end of the eighteenth or beginning of the nineteenth century.

Since then Tent Clubs have been organised, more country has been opened up by the railway and motor-car and the class of horse obtainable has greatly improved. But the sport itself is still conducted on the same lines as it was a hundred years ago, and the etiquette and rules remain much as they were then.

Tent Clubs. The Tent Club in India is to pig-sticking what the Hunt Club in England is to fox-hunting. It is managed by an honorary secretary, who corresponds to the M.F.H. in an English hunting country, and in his hands are all the arrangements for providing shikaris, preserving the country, arranging meets and attending to finance

Photo. Sport & General **Plate 94**

A FORWARD NEAR-SIDE STROKE

NOTE THE POSITION OF THE BRIDLE HAND AND THE RIDER'S BODY TURNED FROM THE HIPS AND LEANT WELL OUT FROM THE SADDLE. THE CHARACTERISTICS OF A POLO PONY AND PIG-STICKER ARE VERY SIMILAR.

Plate 95

A FIRST-CLASS PIG-STICKER

AS HANDY AS A CAT AND AS HARD AS IRON. NOTE THE CHARACTER AND BOLD OUTLOOK OF HIS HEAD AND EYE. HE IS ALSO A FIRST-CLASS POLO PONY.

and the collection of subscriptions. In the field his word is law; he arranges the composition of the heats, and where each heat is to go, and decides, in consultation with the shikaris, on how the country is to be beaten. He is the best man to whom to go for advice on any points in connection with pig-sticking at his own particular station, and can be relied on to welcome new recruits to the club.

Formation of a Stud of Pig-stickers. A new arrival at a pig-sticking station who wishes to try his hand at the sport will find that his first and greatest difficulty lies in the collection of a stud of suitable horses. All the rest of his necessary outfit is cheap enough and easy enough to come by, but a good trained pig-sticker, staunch to pig and reasonably sound, is difficult to find and really first-class performers are few and far between.

If he arrives in January or February and wishes to start pig-sticking at once and is prepared to pay the price, he may be able to get what he wants from someone who is short of cash or who is going on leave, but the supply of made pig-stickers is very restricted and they are hard to find in a hurry.

On the other hand, if he arrives in September or October, he will have four or five months in which to look round and collect his stud before serious pig-sticking commences, and he can either watch his opportunity and buy made pig-stickers when they come on to the market or select green horses and train them himself.

In most districts, with average good luck and provided he starts with his horses fit and sound, he will be able to see the whole season through with four horses, and if he is very lucky he will see it through with three: but a less number will not suffice except in countries where the meets only last one or two days and are within easy reach.

He would be well advised to buy, if he can, at least one made pig-sticker who knows the game and is a safe and handy conveyance across rough country. If he is a good horseman he will have no difficulty in training and making the rest of his stud himself once he knows what is wanted, and he will find plenty to choose from at prices round about £100 in the stables in Bombay and Calcutta, or for less in the Government Remount Depots if he happens to be an officer entitled to buy a charger.

The Type of Horse Required. In choosing a pig-sticker the first thing to remember is that temperament is more important than conformation. A man can see a lot of fun fox-hunting in a great many countries on a horse that is neither bold nor generous, even though he does not enjoy himself as much as he would on a top-sawyer. But this is not so in pig-sticking. If his horse is not bold and free over rough, blind going, and is too cunning and careful to take him within spearing distance of the pig, it will be much better for his temper and his pocket to stay at home.

His horse may give him heavy and painful falls and may be clumsy to turn and hard to stop, or may be a savage in the stable and look like nothing on earth, and will still be forgiven if he will gallop over hairy, blind country and go boldly up to an angry boar and face a charge : but a horse that will not do this is no use as a pig-sticker and is not worth his keep as such.

It is easy enough to try how a horse will go over rough country, but one can never be sure of his staunchness till he meets a boar. It is safe to say, however, that the great majority of well-bred horses of good quality, whose heads do not show signs of a sullen or jady temper, will be staunch enough if they are properly trained and ridden.

Many good horses which start staunch learn to shy off a pig, just as they learn to shy off the ball at polo, because they get into bad hands.

The following are the qualities and points in the order of their importance which the writer would look for if he was choosing a horse to train as a pig-sticker :

(1) He must be well-bred, quick, active and sensitive to the leg.

(2) He must have a good bold eye and a good head. A common head with a prominent forehead or a pig-eye nearly always means that sooner or later its owner will be found to be pig-shy, usually sooner.

(3) He must be bold and free over rough blind country. The " Waler " generally has this quality in abundance, probably owing to the experience of his young days when galloping over the rough clearings of his home run in Australia.

(4) He should have a well-set-on head and neck and a light sloping shoulder, *which he can use well.*

A visitor to the Kadir Cup Meeting who looks round the stables will be struck by the fact that nearly every horse with a reputation as a pig-sticker has a good light forehand, whatever other faults of conformation he may have.

(5) He should have good true action.

(6) He should have hard, sound legs and feet and good sloping pasterns.

(7) He should have strong loins, thighs and hocks, the latter placed well under him.

(8) He should have plenty of heart room, deep, well-sprung back ribs, and be a good doer.

(9) His height should not be more than 15-3 hands.

Training. Before discussing the special training necessary for a pig-sticker, it will be as well to consider exactly what we want him to be able to do when the test comes.

The boar, not the man, chooses the ground over which the hunt takes place. He is a wily animal, and in a district where the sport has flourished for some years he knows from the experience acquired and passed on to him by generations of ancestors who have been hunted and escaped that the horse is more handicapped by rough going than he is, but that on smooth ground the horse has the legs of him. It follows that when hunted he will take good care to select a line where the ground is as rough and the covert as thick as he can find, and over this blind, bad, even treacherous going, the horse will have to follow and carry his rider safely.

When the boar finds he is being overhauled, he still has lots up his sleeve. Just as he seems to be within reach of the spear he will suddenly jink sharp right or left, almost as quickly as a hare turning from a greyhound. The horse flashes on past him and if his rider cannot pull him up short on his hocks and come round quickly, still keeping his eye on the boar, there is a very good chance that the latter will disappear and escape, especially if the jungle is at all thick.

If the man and horse manage to keep on the boar, and succeed in following him jink for jink, the time will soon arrive when the latter is tired and blown, and he will then either charge or give his pursuer an opportunity to rush up alongside

him and deliver his spear. The rider must now be able to regulate his pace by the pig, checking it when necessary : if he presses on too hard the pig will turn short or squat, and if this happens where the jungle is thick he may very easily lose him : but at the same time he must be able to seize the opportunity of a few yards of flat or open going to increase his pace and gallop into the pig with his spear. If his horse is not quick off the mark, easily collected and extended and responsive to hand and leg, he will miss chance after chance : and even if he succeeds in killing the boar he will not do so in the short, sharp, decisive way which is the right sort of finish to a good hunt.

We can now sum up the qualities which we wish to bring out in the pig-sticker during his training :

(1) He must be well balanced and quick off the mark.
(2) He must change cleanly and swing right or left at all paces.
(3) He must come down from a fast gallop to a collected canter, and vice versa, smoothly and quietly.
(4) He must be able to pull up short from a fast gallop, turn on his hocks and jump aff again at once.
(5) He must passage at a canter so that he can be taken sideways into a pig which declines to charge.
(6) He must go kindly and well and do all the above correctly when the rider has only one hand on the reins.
(7) He must be able to gallop fast and stand up over rough, blind going : must be as active as a cat in jumping into and out of, or over

blind nullahs which he cannot see until the very last moment : and must always have a spare leg for any emergency.

It will be seen that the first part of his training differs not at all from the training of a polo pony, and the reader may rest assured that the more perfect he can make his horse in the school, the better the fun he will have off him when it comes to riding a pig in the open.

The next thing to do is to teach him to go well over rough ground and improve his activity and cleverness.

As has been said earlier in this chapter, most " Walers " are naturally very quick and active over bad going, and they start with an advantage over other breeds in this respect. But given the right quick sort of temperament, most horses will become very clever with practice.

The great thing is to begin slowly and not ask too much at first. Trot your young horse over rough ground where he will always have to look where he is going. Jump every sort of small jump or ditch or nullah that you can find, the more unconventional as regards take-off and landing-place the better ; trot up and down steep banks and over drops ; take him through thick grass or *jhow*, or any other sort of covert ; and when he goes freely and well at a trot increase the pace first to a slow collected canter and then by degrees to a fast hard gallop.

Leave his head alone as much as possible and he will soon learn to take care of himself. Every horse hates falling just as much as his rider does, and nearly all the falls out pig-sticking are due either to the rider interfering with his horse's mouth too much, or to the horse going at a bit faster pace than that at which he can keep balanced ; most horses

very soon learn after one or two falls to limit their pace of their own accord to what they know is the fastest at which they can stand up, and no amount of driving with the legs will make a really experienced old pig-sticker exceed this limit.

When your horse is schooled to your satisfaction and goes well over rough ground, it is a good plan to take him out and canter him quietly about for a few hundred yards at a time after a young bullock, which it is easy enough to cut out from a grazing herd. It gives him the idea of following the pig and turning to his jinks.

Another good exercise is to get two other riders to come out and canter about with you as if you formed a heat riding a pig ; but when you begin to do this remember to go very slowly for the first few days and only increase the pace by degrees to a good hard gallop, just as you would begin with slow chukkers for a young polo pony : if you begin at too fast a pace you are apt to make your horse hot and excitable.

When your horse is well schooled, obedient to hand and leg and clever across country, the only essential quality which remains to be proved is his staunchness.

Some horses seem to be naturally staunch, and it is a curious fact that those which are bad-tempered in the stable are very often in this category. But the writer's experience is that practically all honest, generous horses are staunch provided they are really well schooled and are properly ridden up to a pig. Many a good performer is made unstaunch by bad hands. It stands to reason that if a horse is hit in the mouth with a severe bit just when the rider is getting ready to use his spear, he will become pig-shy just as much as he would learn to shy off the ball at polo from similar treat-

ment. The best way to ensure that a young green horse will be staunch is to put him through the riding-school training already advocated and make him absolutely obedient to hand and leg.

If it can be managed there is nothing that will do him more good than actually playing polo on him, where riding off and meeting other ponies is excellent for his nerve. Polo players who do not pig-stick are inclined to look on pig-sticking much as the Spaniards look on bull-fighting, at least as far as the horse is concerned : their attitude is that any old crock is good enough to risk at it, and that no one but a lunatic would pig-stick a valuable polo pony. This idea is so universal outside the pig-sticking world that it adds nothing to a polo pony's value to be able to say that he is also a first-class pig-sticker, in fact rather the reverse ! But if when you are selling your stud of pig-stickers you are able to advertise them not as pig-stickers at all, but as first-class polo ponies, they will command very big prices, and on this ground, as well as because it improves them greatly as pig-stickers, it is well worth teaching them the game.

Pig-sticking Rules and Etiquette. As stated earlier in this chapter, the secretary of the Tent Club is responsible for all arrangements in the field, and his word is law.

His first duty, after arranging the beats, is to decide on the number and composition of each party of spears or " heats." As a rule a heat is composed of three spears, though it may consist sometimes of four and sometimes only of two, and one spear is detailed in each heat to take charge of it. The secretary gives each heat its instructions and tells them whether they are to move along with the line of beaters or whether they are to stand near some particular point and watch for a boar breaking

covert. If the latter, he usually points out zones to each heat in which any pig which appears belongs by rights to them, and leaves the details of taking up their position to the spears themselves.

Every hog-hunter should bear in mind that the wild pig has a very acute sense of smell and of hearing. When placing himself outside a covert he should pay great attention to these characteristics and should carefully study the direction of the wind. The pig's vision is nothing like so good as that of the antelope or deer or even of man, and provided his enemy does not move he will often fail to spot him until he is within a few yards. But if the breeze is blowing from the watcher towards the pig, he will scent danger from a couple of hundred yards away and will at once turn back into covert, and he will do the same if he hears the slightest strange noise.

When a boar goes away the spear who is in charge of the heat gives the signal to ride when he thinks that the right moment has arrived, and the whole heat start together in pursuit. On the other hand, if the heat moves along with the line it will spread out so as to divide up its own part of the line equally among its members ; and if a boar gets up the nearest spear at once starts after it and the rest of his heat join in as soon as possible.

In some Tent Clubs there is a regular printed code of rules as to what is fair or unfair in riding a pig, and in others there is nothing in writing. But whether in writing or not, the recognised rules are practically the same everywhere.

No spear may be delivered on the near side (they are generally ineffective and often dangerous to other riders and horses).

No bumping or boring or riding off is allowed, and no one may cross or interfere with the man

who is on the line of the pig or cut in in front of him, if by so doing he causes him to check his pace to avoid a collision. What this amounts to in practice is that the man on the line of the pig must be left alone and not interfered with as long as he is close up to the pig.

The first spear to draw blood entitles the rider who delivers it to the boar's tushes ; and he is also the man who is fined by the secretary (usually sixteen shillings) if a sow is speared in mistake for a boar or if the boar turns out to be not up to standard in height and weight.

If a boar is speared and lost and given up, but is afterwards picked up afresh and hunted and killed, the first spear goes to the man who gets it in the final hunt.

It is hardly necessary to say that when the first spear has been delivered it is the duty of each member of the heat to do all in his power to assist in killing the boar.

Everyone should make as little noise as possible when moving along with the line or waiting outside covert, and should enforce silence on his syces as well, but when a member of a heat starts after a boar, it is his duty to shout at once and go on shouting as long as he is on the line of the boar, so as to help and guide the rest of his heat : if the boar jinks and another spear takes up the running, it becomes his duty to shout as long as he is on the line, and so on.

Lastly, when a boar is killed, the rider who gets first spear must stay on the spot until the coolies arrive to remove the carcase, or must mark the place clearly with a handkerchief or in some other way. This point is more important than would appear at first sight. If dead pigs are left lying out in a jungle instead of being brought into camp,

that particular jungle may fail to hold again for many months.

Riding a Pig and Horsemanship when Pig-sticking. It has been emphasised earlier in this chapter how important it is to leave your horse's head alone when training him to gallop over bad going. To have a strong enough seat and good enough balance to be certain of being able to do this under all conditions of pace and ground, and to be able to use your legs properly to guide and control your horse, are the essential requirements of horsemanship in pig-sticking.

If you hang on to your horse's mouth you are bound to bring him down sooner or later, and you will have falls enough—unavoidable falls—without adding to their number unnecessarily; besides, even if your horse stands up, he will never gallop freely and well if he is afraid of your hands on the reins.

It is far better to lose contact altogether, throw your reins at him, and trust to your legs to guide him, than to risk interfering with his mouth. If he is well trained and answers to the leg he will follow the pig without much guidance from the reins, though he will have to be steadied and kept in hand when the pig begins to come back to you.

It is wise to use the mildest bit which gives you adequate control. A Ward-Union, a short-cheeked half-moon Pelham, or the Army pattern reversible bit should be enough for any properly trained horse. The unexpected is always happening in a day's pig-sticking, and however certain your seat and however good your hands you will find yourself occasionally interfering with the reins without meaning to, and the more severe the bit the worse the damage.

When riding with the line keep your eyes

skinned for any sign of a pig on the move. If you can be the first of your heat to get on to the boar you will begin the hunt with six to four the best of it, and your horse will go much more freely and kindly through thick grass and *jhow* if he can see the boar in front and use him as a pilot : it will not be nearly so easy or pleasant for the other members of your heat who have to push along through the same sort of covert on your right and left with nothing to lead them : and you will enjoy your hunt twice as much if you are cutting out the work.

When you have picked up a boar and are fairly on his line, you must press him hard. If he is a good-galloping 29-inch boar you will find this no easy task, even on a good horse, as long as he is fresh and has got his wind. You will hardly ever be able to keep him in sight the whole time. You may only be able to catch an occasional glimpse of him when he is crossing a nullah, or some open space twenty or thirty yards ahead, or perhaps you will have to depend on seeing the grass moving or the dust kicked up by his feet. You must think quickly and act on the smallest sign.

When he begins to come back to you, you must steady up and collect your horse so as not to override him, and be ready for the jink which is almost certain to come. If you lose sight of him after a jink your best chance of picking him up again is to cast well forward in the direction in which he was originally going. A boar may squat for a moment after a jink if he is in a thick patch, but nineteen times out of twenty he will move on again almost at once.

After two or three jinks the pig will get much slower as he gets more tired and blown, and you can begin to think of spearing him. Keep your horse collected and get slightly on his left rear, and

then you are ready for him if he turns into you : while if he declines to come in, you are well placed to increase your pace and go into him sideways.

The great thing is always to press him as much as the ground allows : the lighter the jungle and the smoother the going the more you can press him without fear of losing him : but whatever the ground is like, if he will not come into you, you must go into him.

In spearing a pig never thrust at him : keep your spear up till the last possible moment and then just drop the point, hold it steady, and let the force of the collision do the rest. If your spear is sharp it will go in like a hot knife into butter, unless you hit the shoulder-blade or some other thick bone, and even if this happens you will knock the pig over. But if you thrust at him, as you are very apt to do in your excitement, you will miss him clean nine times out of ten.

Always go as fast as you can when spearing or meeting a charge : if you are going fast it is long odds against the pig being able to get in and cut your horse even if you miss him with your spear : while if you go slow or stand still to receive a charge you will find it difficult to get your spear well into him, however sharp it is.

Never spear a pig which is crossing your bows from the off side, unless you can turn and swing with him : if you do you are very likely to be brought down, and the spear may be forced out of your hand, and will then swing round and perhaps go into your horse on the near side. Most of the worst accidents to man and horse from spears have happened in this way.

Always manœuvre your horse so as to avoid an end-on charge or one from your left front. You

will find it very difficult to meet the former unless you can lean out and spear the pig behind the forehead, and you are practically powerless to meet the latter. But if he comes in at you from the right front you have a good chance of getting him in the neck—a very deadly spear—or down through the withers or behind the shoulder.

Your great ambition should be to kill your pig with one spear. The further forward the wound the more deadly it is, so when you spear a pig which is moving in the same direction as yourself or which is coming into you from a flank, aim at hitting him well forward behind his shoulder. As well as being less deadly, the impact of a spear delivered far behind his middle will turn his head round towards you and he may get in and cut your horse.

Spears, Kit, and Saddlery. A few words on the subject of articles of kit and gear may be useful in winding up this chapter.

For the man himself the most important things are his spear and helmet. These two articles are not things on which to economise.

You will have plenty of falls, often on your head, and a few extra rupees spent on a real good sound "Cawnpore topi," with strong, firmly attached anti-crash bands inside, and a good chin-strap outside, may easily save you from bad concussion or worse.

Your spear should be carefully selected, with a good head and a good strong male bamboo shaft. The head should be firmly put on, the end of the shaft being tapered off to fit into it. On no account should the head be "counter-sunk" on to the shaft to avoid having the steel projecting above the surface of the wood : this projecting ridge can be smoothed down by having twine bound round for

an inch or two below the head. Above all have your spears as sharp as razors and their points like needles. Messrs. Bodraj, Aurungabad, Deccan, are famous for their hog-spears, and the writer strongly recommends them. Spare shafts are generally obtainable locally or through the Tent Club.

There is nothing special to say about saddlery, except that it is difficult in India to get saddles satisfactorily restuffed and lined, and for this reason it pays to use a leather numnah which wears well and does not much increase the thickness between the rider and his horse's back; by protecting the saddle from sweat it makes the lining and stuffing wear much longer.

Opinions differ as to the advantage of putting boots on horses' legs. They certainly protect them from thorns and from being knocked by *jhow* bushes: but they need very careful adjusting and even then when wet and muddy are apt to chafe the skin and make it sore.

Lastly, it is wise to provide yourself with a small, easily portable medicine-box containing some antiseptic, bandages, cotton-wool, scissors, etc. You never know when they may be wanted for your horse or yourself, and prompt attention will save many days, perhaps weeks, in healing an injury.

INDEX

Action of the bit, 177–8
Aids, 183
Alexander the Great, cavalry of, 17
Amount of feed, 50
Application, cooling and absorbent, 227
Applications, cold, 114
Approaching horse in stable, 37
Arab seat, 19
Arrival in new quarters, 30
Auction, buying at, 167

Backing, 184
Bad habits, checking horse's, 32, 33
Balance, 81
Balance as affected by head-carriage, 176
Balance, result of, 82
Balling, 115
Bandages, 54, 109, 112, 228
  Exercising, 111
  Fomenting, 112
  Pressure, 112
  Sweating, 118
  Warm, 110
Banks, 96
Beans, 48
Bedding, 48, 54, 106
Bed sores, 109
Beginner, type of horse for, 59
Bit, 175
  Action of the, 177–8
  Evasion of control from the, 179
  For pig-sticking, 277
  Refusing to face the, 180
  Severe, 212
  Size of, 178
  Tongue over the, 180
Biting, 159
Bitting, 57
  A well-balanced horse, 177
  A youngster, 177
Bleeding, 131
Body-brush, 39
Bog spavin, 157
Bone spavin, 157
Bots, 126
Bran, 48
Bran mash, 45, 46, 107
Break out, horses that, 41
Bridling, 56
British horsemanship, early, 18
Broken knees, 143
Brooks, 97
Brushes, stable, 39
Brushing, 144
Bucking, 214
Burns, 133
Buying a horse, 163

Calkins, 151
Canter, 68, 187
Capped elbow, 142
Capped hock, 156

Care of horse after the race, 230
Legs, 226
Polo ponies, 261
Carriage, head, 191
Catarrh, 120
Changing leading leg, 188
Chinese, use of cavalry 2637 B.C., 17
Chin-groove, 178
Class of horse for show jumping, 236, 244
Cleaning horses, 41
Clearing the wind, 221
Clipping, 54
Clothing, 54
Clothing, horse, 105
Cold, 120
Cold applications, 114
Colic, 125
Collecting a horse, 185
Confidence, 72, 193
Confidence on a race-course, 224
Conformation of a hunter, 168
Conscience, horse's, 32
Constipation, 126
Control of horse, 68
Corns, 153
Coughs, 120
Courage, horse's, 17
Cowboy, 19
Cracked heels, 135
Crib biting, 158
Curb, 156
Curb-chain, 56, 178
Curry-comb, 39
Cutting, 144

Daily routine, stable, 49
Dandy-brush, 39
Darius, hunting accident, 17
Delicate feeders, 51
Depraved appetite, 160
Diarrhœa, 126
Difficult horses, 205
Direct impulsion, 183
Dismounting, 63
Doorways, care in, 38
Drainage, stable, 52
Drenching, 115
Drying bandages, 41
Drying horses, 41

Eassie's patent panel, 140
Elbow, capped, 142
Endurance, horse's, 17
Enemas, 116
Enlarged fetlock joints, 150
Evasion of bit control, 179
Exercise, 55, 109
Exercising bandages, 111
Eyes, injuries to, 136

Farmers, attitude to, 34
Feeding, 42
Feed, amount of, 50
Feeding for racing, 218
Feeding sick horses, 106
Feet, treatment of, 227
Fetlock joints, enlarged, 150
Fever, 119
Filled legs, 150
First-aid to horses, 103
remedies, 103
First season polo ponies, 248
Flexions, lateral, 182
Floors, stable, 52
Fomentations, 112
Fomenting bandages, 112
Foot lifting, 38
Full passage, 186

Gallop, 69
Galls, saddle, 137
  Wind, 150
Gates, 98
Gaucho, 19
Gear, racing, 232
Green food, 49
Grooming, 40, 106
Grooms, characteristics of, 31
  Stud-, 34
Gruel, 107

Half-made polo ponies, 247
Half-passage, 186
Halting, 187
Hand, showing horse in, 172
Hands, 201
  and arms, 65
  Sympathetic, 70, 84
  while jumping, 84
Happiness of horses, 223
Haunches, turning on the, 186, 258
Haute école, 18, 190
Hay, 47
  racks, 52
  tea, 108
Head-carriage, 176, 191
Head-collar, 30
Heels, cracked, 135
  Wet, 41
Herodotus, 17
Hind leg, injuries to, 155
Hints on polo, 261
Hip down, 155
Hock, capped, 156
Holding the reins, 75
Hoof-pick, 39
Horsemanship when pig-sticking, 277
Hours, regular, 51
Hunter conformation, 167
Hunting :
  After, 99
  Before, 91
  While, 93

Ignorance, results of, 34
Imperial Stables, Vienna, 18, 19
Impulsion, direct, 183
Influenza, 122

Jar on landing, 194
Jumping :
  At the canter, 80
  First lessons, 192
  Lessons, 80
  Points to remember, 203
  Procedure, 202
  Rushing fences, 196
  Schooling mounted, 195
  Show, 235
  Slow pace, 195
  without reins or stirrups, 85

Kicking, 213
Kicking in the stable, 159
Kit, pig-sticking, 280
Knee-caps, 30
Knees, broken, 143

Lameness, 147
  Detection of, 37
Laminitis, 151
Landing, jar on, 194
Lateral flexions, 182
  impulsion, 185
Leading a horse, 38
Legs, 77
  Changing leading, 188
  Care of, 226
  Injuries of hind, 155
  Use of, 86
Length of rein, 73

Lice, 134
Linseed, 48
  mash, 45
  tea, 108
Long reins, 250
Lowering the head, 179

Made polo ponies, 249
Martingales, 198
Mash, bran and linseed, 45
Medieval horsemanship, 18
Meet, at the, 93
Memory, horse's, 31
Mentality, horse's, 30, 31, 32
  Limitations of, 32
Methods of riding, 19
Misunderstanding, 71
Monotony, 52
Mounted training of polo ponies, 251
Mounting, 62
  a youngster, 251
Mouth :
  Injuries to, 137
  One-sided, 181
Mouthing bits, 175
Mud fever, 135
Muscling-up, 220

Nappy horses, 199, 216
Nervous energy, 223
New quarters, horses arrival in, 30
Nursing, instructions for grooms, 117

Oatmeal gruel, 48
Oats, 47
Obligations, a fox-hunter's, 88
Olympia, 235
One-sided mouth, 181
Opening gates, 98
Over-feeding, results of, 45
Over-reach, 145

Pace in jumping, 195
Passaging, 186
Patent panel, Eassie's, 140
Patience, 197
Peas, 48
Pecking, 84
Pig-sticking, 266
  Bits, 277
  Horsemanship, 277
  Rules and etiquette, 274
  Saddlery, 280
  Spears, 280
  Stud, 267
  Training horse for, 270
  Type of horse for, 268
Plates, 227
Point-to-point races, 232
Points in polo ponies, 246
Poking the nose upwards, 179
Polo :
  Hints on playing, 261
  Horsemanship, 263
Polo ponies :
  Care of, 261
  First season, 248
  Half-made, 247
  Made, 249
  Mounted training of, 251
  Points in, 246
  Types, 245
Poor horses, 51
Port, height of, 179
Posts and rails, 96
Poultices, 112
Pressure bandages, 112
Pullers, 210

Quidding, 123

Race :
  Care of horse after the, 230
  Riding the, 228
Racing :
  gear, 232
  over fences, 217
Rails, 96
Rancher, 19
Rasping teeth, 124
Rearing, 215
Refusing, 83, 199
  to face the bit, 180
  to walk, 208
Rein, length of, 73
Reining, back, 184
Reins, holding the, 75
Reprisals, 199
Reward, 194
Riding :
  a pig, 277
  School training, 183
  without stirrups, 68
Ring, procedure in the, 243
Ringbone, 151
Ringworm, 135
Rising at the trot, 67
Rogues, 33
Routine and feeding daily, 49
Rubbers, 39
Rules and etiquette of pig-sticking, 274
Rushing fences, 196

Saddle :
  Galls, 137
  Soap, 55
Saddlery, 55
  Pig-sticking, 280
Saddling, 56
Salt, 48
Sandcrack, 152
Scalds, 133
Schooling a race-horse, 224
Screws, 60
Seat, the, 63
Seats, types of, 64
Severe bits, 212
Shins, sore, 148
Shoeing for racing, 227
Shoes, 54
Show jumping, 235
Showing horse in hand, 172
Shying, 206
Sick :
  Box, 104
  Horses, feeding, 106
Side bones, 151
Size of horse, 61
Skin diseases, 134
Sleeping standing, 160
Slobbering, 123
Snaffle, 30, 180, 195
Sore shins, 148
Sores, bed, 107
Spavins, bone and bog, 157
Spears, pig-sticking, 280
Speedy cutting, 144
Sponges, 39
Sprains, 148
Spurs, 174
Stable :
  Buildings, 52
  Hints for novices, 36
Stableman, 58
Stables after hunting, 100
Stick and ball, 259
Stifle slip, 156
Stings, 133
Stirrups :
  Length of, 65, 78
  Riding without, 68
Strangles, 121
Straw, 48
Stud-grooms, 34
Stud, pig-sticking, 267
Stumbling, 205
Sweating bandages, 118
Swinging to either hand, 257

Suppleness, 73
Surfeit, 135
Sympathetic hands, 70, 84

Tail-pad, 30
Tearing the clothing, 160
Teeth, rasping, 124
Temperament, 61
Tent Clubs, 266
Thoroughbred, characteristics of, 31
Thoroughpin, 157
Thrush, 153
Tongue over the bit, 180
Training :
  Object of school, 189
  Pig-sticking, 270
  Result of over-hasty, 189
  Riding-school, 183
  Show jumpers, 235
Travelling, 231
  Precaution when, 30
Treads, 145
Trot, rising at, 67
Trying a horse, 165
Turning, 67
  on the haunches, 186, 258
Types of horses, 163
  for pig-sticking, 268
  for show jumping, 236, 244

Utensils, stable, 39

Ventilation, 52, 105
Vices, stable, 158
Voice, the, 74

Walk, refusing to, 208
Walking the box, 159
  the course, 228
Warm bandages, 110
Water, 106
Water-brush, 39
Watering, 46
Weaving, 158
Weighing, 230
Well-balanced horse, bitting a, 177
Wet heels, 41
Whip, use of, in race, 234
Wind :
  Clearing the, 221
  Galls, 150
  Sucking, 158
Wisp, 40
Worms, 126, 127
Wounds, 130

Xenophon, Treaty on Horsemanship, 20–30

Printed in Great Britain by R. & R. Clark, Limited, *Edinburgh.* 1945

KS-455-802